

Beginners II

しょきゅう

初級 II: Beginners II

第51課: Adjectives III: *No*-Adjectival Nouns ノ形容詞

第52課: Adjectives: *Ōi* 多い & *Sukunai* 少ない

第53課: Adjectives: *Onaji* 同じ

第54課: Counters III (Time: Part I): 日, 週間, 月, 年, Etc.

第55課: Counters IV (Time: Part II): 時, 時間, 分, 秒, 晩, 夜

第56課: Basic Absolute Time Phrases

第57課: *Kara*, *Node*, & *Noda*: から, ので, & のだ

第58課: The Particle *Noni*: のに

第59課: Criticizing: くせに & くせして

第60課: Adnominal Adjectives: /i/ vs /na/

第61課: Before: *Mae* 前

第62課: After I: *Ato* あと, *Nochi* のち, *Te kara* てから

第63課: When: *Toki* 時

第64課: Relative Time

第65課: Transitivity I: Different Transitive & Intransitive Forms

第66課: The Particle *To*: と II: Citation

第67課: The Particle *Demo*: でも

第68課: The Particle *Ya*: や

第69課: The Particle *Shi*: し

第70課: Kosoado こそあど IV

第71課: While I: Aida 間

第72課: While II: Uchi うち

第73課: Time Phrases + に

第74課: Giving Verbs

第75課: Permission: ていい

第76課: The Conjunctive Particles が & けれど

第77課: 語尾 I: よ & ね

第78課: 語尾 II: わ, な, と, の, さ, ぞ, ぜ, & え

第79課: Start to: ～始める, ～出す, & ～かける

第80課: End: ～終わる・終える, ～やむ, & ～上がる・上げる

第81課: Whenever: 毎～, ～毎に, & ～おきに

第82課: Potential I

第83課: Potential II: できる

第84課: Pronouns II

第85課: The Particle だけ

第86課: The Non-Question "How": ～かた

第87課: Interrogatives II: The Question "How"

第88課: Interrogatives III: With Particles

第89課: The Particle の II

第90課: The Particle で II

第91課: Might: かもしれない

第92課: Pluralization

第93課: Pluralization II: ～たち

第94課: Pluralこそあど: これら, それら, & あれら

第95課: Te て With Giving Verbs: ～てあげる, ～てくれる, & ～てもらう

第96課: 知る VS 分かる

第97課: Counters V: 文字, クラス, 品, 桁, 切れ, 玉, 房, 株, 袋, 箱, 棟, 組み, 皿, 束, & 通り

第98課: Counters VI: 羽, 部, 戸, 発, 軒, 人前, 丁, 本, 点, 泊, 通, 尾, 駅, & 兆

第99課: Want and Feeling I: ～たい & ほしい

第100課: Want and Feeling II: ～がる

第51課: Adjectives III: No-Adjectival Nouns ノ形容詞

In our coverage of “adjectival nouns (形容動詞),” we looked at a class of words that behave as adjectives but are etymologically nouns that use the copula to behave as such. The topic of *adjectival nouns*, though, does not stop with adjectives that use the copula to modify nouns. There are also many words that are adjectival that look like nouns but use *no* の to modify nouns and *ni* に to modify verbs as adverbs. In essence, they're hybrids of nouns and adjectives.

This lesson will focus on those words as well as their close connection to *na*-adjectival nouns. Although distinguishing between these two groups of words is often impossible to do, you'll learn more about the real dynamics of Japanese adjectives.

Vocabulary List

Nouns

- 修行 *Shugyō* – (Ascetic) training/discipline
- 人生 *Jinsei* – (Human) life
- 意味 *Imi* – Meaning

normal *Hito* – Person

Adjectival Nouns

- 本当 {の} *Hontō [no]* – Actual/true/real
- 大変 {な} *Taihen [na]* – Serious/hard /immense
- 独特 {な・の} *Dokutoku [na/no]* – Unique/peculiar

- ブッダ (仏陀) *Budda* – (A) Buddha
- 生活 *Seikatsu* – Life/livelihood
- 噂 *Uwasa* – Rumor
- 車内アナウンス *Shanai anaunsu* – Train announcement
- 喋り方 *Shaberikata* – Way of speaking
- 音程 *Onte* – Pitch/interval
- 夕暮れ前 *Yūgure-mae* – Before dusk
- 空 *Sora* – Sky
- 使い方 *Tsukaikata* – Way to use
- 注意 *Chūi* – Attention
- 注射 *Chūsha* – Shot/injection
- 土鍋 *Donabe* – Earthenware pot
- 底 *Soko* – Bottom
- 左足 *Hidariashi* – Left foot
- 右足 *Migiashi* – Right foot
- ブレーキ *Burēki* - Break
- アクセル *Akuseru* - Accelerator
- 景気 *Keiki* - Business
- 時期 *Jiki* – Time/period
- 場所 *Basho* – Place
- 株式 *Kabushiki* – Stock (company)
- 特別 {な・の} *Tokubetsu [na/no]* – Especial
- 普通 {の} *Futsū [no]* – Ordinary/general
- 四角 {の・な} *Shikaku [no/na]* - Square
- 連日 {の} *Renjitsu [no]* – Prolonged/every day
- 一般 {の} *Ippan [no]*- General
- 一流 {の} *Ichiryū [no]* – First-class/top grade
- 大人 {の・な} *Otona [no/na]* – Adult(-like)
- 最初 {の} *Saisho [no]* - First
- 苦手 {な} *Nigate [na]* – Bad at
- 生 {の・な} *Nama [no/na]* – Raw/unprocessed/live/crude/unprotected
- 他 {の} *Ta/hoka [no]* - Other
- 多く {の} *Ōku [no]* - A lot
- 高度 {な・の} *Kōdo [na/no]* – Sophisticated
- それぞれ {の} *Sorezore [no]* – Each
- 必要 {な} *Hitsuyō [na]* – Necessary
- 世界中 {の} *Sekai-jū [no]* – Worldwide
- NG {な} *Enujii [na]* – Not good
- 優遇 {の} *Yūgū [no]* – Preferential
- 皮肉 {な} *Hiniku [na]* – Irony

- 価格 *Kakaku* – Price/value/cost
- 大学 *Daigaku* – University/college
- 大人 *Otona* – Adult
- 最初 *Saisho* – Beginning
- 態度 *Taido* – Attitude
- 感じ *Kanji* - Feeling
- 鶏肉 *Toriniku* - Poultry
- 俎板 *Manaita* - Cutting board
- ボール *Bōru* – Bowl/ball
- 調理器具 *Chōri kigu* – Cooking ware
- 新興国 *Shinkōkoku* – Emerging nation
- 経済 *Keizai* – Economy
- 成長 *Seichō* – Growth/development
- 食文化 *Shokubunka* – Food culture/cuisine
- 舌 *Shita* – Tongue/palate
- 必要 *Hitsuyō* - Necessity
- 料理 *Ryōri* – Cuisine/cookery
- 思い込み *Omoikomi* – Assumption
- 専業主婦 *Sengyō shufu* - Housewife
- 措置 *Sochi* – Measure
- 女性 *Josei* – Female
- 就労 *Shūrō* – Being employed

normal

- 個別 {の} *Kobetsu [no]* – Individual
- 緑色 {の} *Midori'iro [no]* – Green
- 黒 {の} *Kuro [no]* – Black
- 健康 {な} *Kenkō [na]* – Healthy
- 鮮やか {な} *Azayaka [na]* – Vivid/vibrant
- 大量 {の} *Tairyō [no]* – Large amount of
- 地球上 {の} *Chikyūjō [no]* – On Earth
- 色々 {な・の} *Iroiro [na/no]* – Various
- 急速 {な} *Kyūsoku [na]* – Rapid
- 別 {の・な} *Betsu [no/na]* – Different
- 対等 {な・の} *Taitō [na/no]* – Equal
- 当たり前 {な・の} *Atarimae [na/no]* – Obvious
- 当然 {な・の} *Tōzen [na/no]* – Obvious
- 平気 {な} *Heiki [na]* – Calm/fine
- 大丈夫 {な} *Daijōbu [na]* – Alright
- 適度 {な・の} *Tekido [na/no]* – Moderate (amount)
- 不思議 {な} *Fushigi [na]* – Mysterious
- 永遠 {の} *Eien [no]* – Eternal
- 仲良し {の} *Nakayoshi [no]* – Close/intimate
- 最悪 {の・な} *Saiaku [no/na]* – Worst

Adverbs

- 意欲 *Iyoku* – Will/desire/urge
- 結果 *Kekka* – Result/effect
- 症状 *Shōjō* – Symptom(s)
- 叔父 *Oji* – Uncle (younger than one's parent)
- 家 *Ie* – House/home
- 雨 *Ame* – Rain
- 髪 *Kami* – Hair
- 色 *Iro* - Color
- 草原 *Sōgen* - Grassland
- 裏側 *Uragawa* – Back(side)
- 黒 *Kuro* – Black
- 服 *Fuku* - Clothes
- 体 *Karada* – Body
- 健康 *Kenkō* – Health
- 状態 *Jōtai* – Condition
- 心臓 *Shinzō* – Heart
- 森 *Mori* – Forest
- 奴 *Yatsu* – Guy
- 進化 *Shinka* – Evolution
- 発展 *Hatten* – Development/advancement
- 人間 *Ningen* – Human
- わざと *Waza to* – On purpose
- 若干 *Jakkan* – Somewhat
- 最初から *Saisho kara* – From the beginning
- ごく *Goku* – Quite
- ちょっと *Chotto* – A little
- そのまま *Sono mama* – As is
- 延々と *En'en to* – Endlessly
- 必ず *Kanarazu* – Always
- 極めて *Kiwamete* – Extremely
- 今日 *Kyō* – Today
- 今週 *Konshū* – This week

(ru) Ichidan Verbs

- 積み重ねる *Tsumikasaneru* – To pile up (trans.)
- 上げる *Ageru* – To raise (trans.)
- 別ける *Wakeru* – To divide/split/share /distinguish (trans.)
- 触れる *Fureru* – To touch (intr.)
- やめる *Yameru* – To stop (trans.)
- 食べる *Taberu* – To eat (trans.)
- 認める *Mitomeru* – To recognize (trans.)
- 着る *Kiru* – To wear (trans.)
- 遂げる *Togeru* – To achieve/accomplish

- 関係 *Kankei* – Relation
- 意見 *Iken* – Opinion
- 種類 *Shurui* – Species
- 哺乳類 *Honyūru* – Mammal
- 鳥 *Tori* – Bird
- 担当者 *Tantōsha* – Manager
- テクニック *Tekunikku* – Technique
- 立場 *Tachiba* – Position/footing
- 貿易 *Bōeki* – Trade
- こと *Koto* – Thing/incident/situation
- 太陽 *Taiyō* – Sun
- 恩恵 *Onkei* – Grace/favor
- 判断 *Handan* – Judgment
- お酒 *Osake* – Liquor
- 運動 *Undō* – Exercise
- 現象 *Genshō* – Phenomenon
- 友達 *Tomodachi* – Friend(s)
- 別れ *Wakare* – Parting/Separation
- 相性 *Aishō* – Affinity
- 女神 *Megami* – Goddess
- 彼氏 *Kareshi* – Boyfriend

(trans.)

- いる *Iru* – To be (animate and live) (trans.)
- 出る *Deru* – To leave/appear /emerge/come up (intr.)
- 起きる *Okiru* – To get up/occur (intr.)
- 別れる *Wakareru* – To separate/break up (intr.)

(u) Godan Verbs

- 悟る *Satoru* – To be enlightened/discern (trans.)
- なる *Naru* – To be(come) (intr.)
- 払う *Harau* – To pay (attention/money) /brush off (trans.)
- 立ち入る *Tachi'iru* – To enter/trespass (int.)
- 違う *Chigau* – To be different/wrong (intr.)
- 取る *Toru* – To take (trans.)
- 残る *Nokoru* – To be left (intr.)
- 焼く *Yaku* – To burn/bake/toast/heat up/tan/burn (disc) (trans.)
- 習う *Narau* – To take lessons in (trans.)
- 持つ *Motsu* – To hold/possess (trans.)
- 招く *Maneku* – To invite/beckon (trans.)
- 削ぐ *Sogu* – To chip off/discourage (trans.)
- 保つ *Tamotsu* – To preserve (trans.)

Pronouns

normal

- 私達 *Watashitachi* - We

Proper Nouns

- 関東人 *Kantōjin* - Kanto(ite)
- 日本人 *Nihonjin* – Japanese person

Question Words

- 誰にでも *Dare ni demo* – Anyone

Demonstratives

- この *Kono* – This (adj.)
- こういう *Kō iu* – Like this
- あの *Ano* – That (over there) (adj.)
- あそこ *Asoko* – That over there

Adjectives

- 厳しい *Kibishii* – Harsh/strict
- 浅い *Asai* – Shallow
- 薄い *Usui* – Thin/pale
- 良い *Yoi* – Good
- 美しい *Uruwashii* – Beautiful/lovely

Number Phrases

- 二人 *Futari* – Two people

- 広がる *Hirogaru* – To extend/stretch (intr.)
- 行う *Okonau* – To perform/conduct (trans.)
- 棲む *Sumu* – To inhabit (intr.)
- 思う *Omou* – To think (trans.)
- 言う *Iu* – To say (trans.)

suru Verbs

- 留学（を）する *Ryūgaku (wo) suru* – To study abroad (intr.)
- アナウンスする *Anaunsu suru* – To announce (trans.)
- 運転する *Unten suru* – To drive (trans.)
- 下落する *Geraku suru* – To depreciate (intr.)
- 入学する *Nyūgaku suru* – To enroll (intr.)
- 調理する *Chōri suru* – To prepare (food) (trans.)
- 指定する *Shitei suru* – To designate/specify (trans.)
- 料理する *Ryōri suru* – To cook
- 対する *Tai suru* – To face/be directed toward/contrast with (intr.)
- 管理する *Kanri suru* – To manage
- 対応する *Taiō suru* – To handle
- 構築する *Kōchiku suru* – To construct

Set Phrases

- 鼻にかかった *Hana ni kakatta* – Nasal
- 特別の機関 *Tokubetsu no kikan* – Attached organization
- 百薬の長 *Hyakuyaku no chō* – Chief of medicines
- 不思議の国 *Fushigi no kuni* – Wonderland
- ようこそ *Yōkoso* – Welcome

No vs. Na

At first glance, many *no*-adjectives seem to share the same functions that *na*-adjectival nouns have. These so-called *no*-adjectives may be used to modify nouns, form the predicate of a sentence, or even be used adverbially by switching out *no* の with *ni* に.

きび しゅぎょう つ かさ じんせい ほんとう い み さと ひと い
 1. 厳しい修行を積み重ねて人生の本当の意味を悟った人を「ブッダ」と言います。
Kibishii shugyō wo tsumikasanete jinsei no hontō no imi wo satotta hito wo "Budda" to iimasu.

We call people who have built up rigid discipline and have become enlightened about the true meaning of life a "Buddha."

りゅうがくせいかつ ほんとう たいへん
 2. 留学生活は本当に大変でした。
Ryūgaku seikatsu wa hontō ni taihen deshita.
 Life while studying abroad was really tough.

うわさ ほんとう
 3. あの噂は本当だった。
Ano uwasa wa hontō datta.
 That rumor was true.

しゃない はな どくとく しゃべ かた おんてい あ
 4. 車内アナウンスをする人たちは、わざと鼻にかかった独特の喋り方で音程を上げてアナウンスしているんですよ。
Shanai anaunsu wo suru hitotachi wa, waza to hana ni kakatta dokutoku no shaberikata de ontei wo agete anaunsu shite iru n desu yo.
 Train announcers purposely do the announcements with a raised pitch by speaking in a peculiarly nasal fashion.

ゆうぐ まえ そら どくとく
 5. 夕暮れ前の空は独特でした。
Yūgure-mae no sora wa dokutoku deshita.

The sky before dusk was peculiar.

normal

つか かた じゃっかんどくとく

6. 使い方も若干独特になっています。

Tsukaikata mo jakkan dokutoku ni natte imasu.

How to use it is also somewhat peculiar.

とくべつ ちゅうい はら

7. 特別に注意を払ってください。

Tokubetsu ni chūi wo haratte kudasai.

Pay especial attention.

ふつう どなべ ちが そこ しかく あさ

8. 普通の土鍋と違って底が四角で、浅いのです。

Futsū no donabe to chigatte soko ga shikaku de, asai no desu.

Different from a regular earthenware pot, the bottom of (this one) is square and shallow.

れんじつちゅうしゃ ふつう

9. 連日注射はごく普通ですよ。

Renjitsu chūsha wa goku futsū desu yo.

Prolonged shots are quite normal.

Grammar Note: At times, *no* の is omitted from *no*-adjective phrases like in **renjitsu chuusha** 連日注射. This is very common when the resultant phrase is four characters or longer and when said resultant phrase semantically refers to a particular concept.

さいしょ ひだりあし みぎあし わ ふつう うんてん

10. 最初から左足でブレーキ、右足でアクセルと別けて普通に運転しています。

Saisho kara hidariashi de burēki, migashi de akuseru to wakete futsū ni unten shite imasu.

I've been driving like normal from the beginning by putting my left foot on the break and my right foot on the accelerator.

いっばん ひと た い ばしょ

11. あそこは一般の人が立ち入れない場所です。

Asoko wa ippan no hito ga tachi'irenai basho desu.

That place over there can't be entered by people at large.

Grammar Note: *Tachi'ireru* 立ち入れる is the potential (can) form of the verb *tachi'iru* 立ち入る, which is used to mean “enter” usually in the sense of “to trespass.”

いっばん けい き わる じ き かぶしき かかく げらく

12. 一般に景気が悪い時期には株式の価格が下落します。

Ippan ni keiki ga warui jiki ni wa kabushiki no kakaku ga geraku shimasu.

Generally when business is bad, the stock price/stock prices goes down.

いちりゅう だいがく にゅうがく

13. 一流の大学に入 学しました。

Ichiryū no daigaku ni nyūgaku shita.

I enrolled into a first class university.

Many *no*-adjectival nouns can also be used as *na*-adjectival nouns instead. The nuance will tend to be different, but the interchangeability is still there.

ほんとう おとな ひと にがて
14. 本当に大人な人が苦手です。
Hontō ni otona na hito ga nigate desu.
I'm bad with really adult-like people.

だれ おとな たいど と
15. 誰にでも大人の態度を取っていますか。
Dare ni demo otona no taido wo totte imasu ka?
Do you take an adult attitude with anyone?

なま かん のこ
16. ちょっと生な感じが残っている。
Chotto nama na kanji ga nokotte iru.
There's still a somewhat uncooked/unprocessed/unpolished feel to it.

Meaning Note: The meaning of *nama* 生 can be quite varied, which is why context is needed to know how it's meant.

なま とりにく ふ まないた ぼ る ちょうりきぐ ほか ちょうり しょう
17. 生の鶏肉に触れた俎板やボールなどの調理器具はそのまま他の調理に使用することはやめましょう。
Nama no toriniku ni fureta manaita ya bōru nado no chōri kigu wa sono mama hoka no chōri ni shiyō suru koto wa yamemashō.
Let's stop using cookware, such as cutting boards and bowls, that have come in contact with raw poultry when preparing other dishes.

Grammar Note: The ending *-mashō* ましょう is used in this context to create a general polite suggestion for everyone to follow. It is the "let's" in the translation.

せかいじゅう しんこうこく こうど けいざいせいちょう め ざ
18. 世界中の新興国はそれぞれ高度の経済成長を目指しています。
Sekaijū no shinkōkoku wa sorezore kōdo no keizai seichō wo mezashite imasu.
Developing countries worldwide are each aiming for rapid economic growth.

わたし かんとうじん こうど しょくぶんか した も
19. 私たち関東人は、高度な食文化と舌を持っているんですよ。
Watashitachi kantōjin wa, kōdo na shokubunka to shita wo motte iru n desu yo.
We Kanto-ites possess a sophisticated cuisine and palate.

とくべつ きかん してい ひつよう みと
20. 特別の機関を指定する必要は認めない。
Tokubetsu no kikan wo shitei suru hitsuyō wa mitomenai.
(We) do not recognize the need to designate an Attached Organization.

Meaning Note: An “Attached Organization” is an organization in the Japanese government established for some specific purpose.

21. 多くのテクニックや特別な料理を習いました。
Ōku no tekunikku ya tokubetsu na ryōri wo naraimashita.
I was taught on a lot of techniques and special cuisines.

No not Allowed

Conversely, not all *na*-adjectival nouns can be used as *no*-adjectival nouns instead.

22. 勝手 {な ○ ・ の X} 思い込みはNG!
Katte [na ○ /no X] omoikomi wa NG!
Arbitrary assumptions are no good!

23. 専業主婦に対する優遇措置が、女性の就労意欲を削ぐ皮肉 {な ○ ・ の X} 結果を招いている。
Sengyō shufu ni tai suru yūgū sochi ga, josei no shūrō iyoku wo sogu hiniku [na ○ /no X] kekka wo maneite iru.
Preferential treatment toward housewives has brought about the ironic effect of weakening female desire to work.

Na → NG

There are some *no*-adjectives that can never have *no* の be replaced by *na* な. There are instances where switching them is grammatically incorrect.

24. それぞれ {の ○ ・ な X} 個別 {の ○ ・ な X} 症状が出ることがあります。
Sorezore [no ○/na X] kobetsu [no ○/na X] shōjō ga deru koto ga arimasu.
Individual symptoms of each occasionally occur.

Grammar Note: *Koto ga aru* ことがある, when after the non-past tense of a verb, is used to show "occasional behavior."

25. 叔父の家でさっき大量 {の ○ ・ な X} の雨が降っていました。
Oji no ie de sakki tairyō [no ○/na X] ame ga futte imashita.
There was a massive amount of rain just now at my uncle's house.

Noun or Adjective?

Sometimes, telling whether a *no* の should be treated as a noun or an adjective is not easy. The best way to figure this out is by thinking about the phrase's English equivalent. For instance, in the phrase "hair color," both "hair" and "color" are recognized as nouns, but in this phrase, "hair" is an attribute to color. As such, treating it as an adjective-like noun

normal

phrase would be appropriate.

くろ ふく き
26. 黒の服を着る。(Adjective?)

Kuro no fuku wo kiru.

To wear black clothes.

にほんじん かみ いろ くろ
27. 日本人の髪の色は黒ですね。(Noun?)

Nihonjin no kami no iro wa kuro desu ne.

Japanese hair color is black, isn't it.

あざ みどりいろ そうげん えんえん ひろ
28. 鮮やかな緑色の草原が延々と広がっていた。(Adjective?)

Azayaka na midori'iro no sōgen ga en'en to hirogatte ita.

A vibrant, green grassland endlessly stretched out.

うらがわ みどりいろ うす
29. 裏側は緑色が薄くなっている。(Noun?)

Uragawa wa midori'iro ga usuku natte iru.

On the back, the green is light.

からだ けんこう じょうたい たも
30. 体を健康な状態に保つ。(Adjective?)

Karada wo kenkō na jōtai ni tamotsu.

To keep one's body healthy.

しんぞう けんこう じょうたい かんり
31. 心臓の健康の状態を管理する。(Noun?)

Shinzō no kenkō no jōtai wo kanri suru.

To manage the condition of one's heart.

Interchangeability of No の and Na な

Even when it may be standard to use either *na* な or *no* の, variation will still exist between the two. The motivations for why *na* な is used in place of *no* の when either is possible, or when the latter is deemed standard form, are as follows:

1. The use of *na* な strengthens the sense that one is qualifying the phrase that follows.
2. The use of *na* な becomes more casual, especially when it is not the “standard” choice.
3. Generally speaking, *na* な is typically softer and subjective in nature whereas *no* の can sound colder, more objective, and stiff.
4. *No* の may feel simply as a mere connector of phrases whereas *na* な can embed some of the speaker's feelings on top of functioning as a modifier.

The difference between the two largely falls on the feeling of the individual. Whenever either can be used, a semantic space is opened up to meet the emotional needs of the context. If

normal

you are ever corrected on the use of *na* な vs. *no* の, the cadence and tone of what you are saying will likely be faulty rather than the choice itself being fundamentally wrong.

In the following sentences, the adjectival nouns used can either use *na* な or *no* の, but the choice between the two is made based on the guidelines above.

ちきゅうじょう いろいろ しゅるい ほにゅうるい きゅうそく しんかはってん と
32. 地球上に色々な種類の哺乳類が急速に進化発展を遂げました。
Chikyūjō ni iroiro no shurui no honyūruī ga kyūsoku ni shinka hatten wo togemashita.
Various species of mammals on Earth have undergone rapid evolutionary development.

もり いろいろ とり す
33. この森には色々な鳥が棲んでいます。
Kono mori ni wa iroiro na tori ga sunde imasu.
There are various kinds of birds that live in this forest.

べつ いけん い やつ へいき
34. 別な意見を言う奴がいても、平気です。
Betsu na iken wo iu yatsu ga ite mo, heiki desu.
I'm fine even if there's a guy with a different opinion.

べつ たんとうしゃ たいおう だいじょうぶ
35. 別の担当者が対応しても大丈夫です。
Betsu no tantōsha ga taiō shite mo daijōbu desu.
It's okay if a different manager handles it.

たいとう にんげんかんけい こうちく
36. 対等な人間関係を構築する。
Taitō na ningen kankei wo kōchiku suru.
To build equal human relations.

たいとう たちば ぼうえき おこな
37. 対等の立場で貿易を行う。
Taitō no tachiba de bōeki wo okonau.
To conduct trade on equal footing.

あ まえ い ひと かなら
38. こういう当たり前なことを言う人は必ずいるよね。
Kō iu atarimae na koto wo iu hito wa kanarazu iru yo ne.
There's always a person who says obvious things like this, huh.

わたし にんげん たいよう おんけい あ まえ おも
39. 私たち人間は太陽の恩恵を当たり前のことだと思っています。
Watashitachi ningen wa taiyō no onkei wo atarimae no koto da to omotte imasu.
We humans think of the benefits of the Sun as something of the ordinary.

きわ どうぜん はんだん おも
40. 極めて当然な判断だと思います。
Kiwamete tōzen na handan da to omoimasu.
I think it is an extremely obvious judgment.

とうぜん けっか で
41. 当然の結果が出ました。

Tōzen no kekka ga demashita.

The obvious results were made.

てきど さけ ひやくやく ちょう
42. 適度のお酒は、「百薬の長」なのです。

Tekido no osake wa, "hyakuyaku no chō" na no desu.

That's because a moderate amount of liquor is the chief of all medicines.

てきど うんどう からだ
43. 適度な運動は体によいです。

Tekido na undō wa karada ni yoi desu.

Moderate exercise is good for the body.

Set Phrases

Sometimes, variation is typically restricted to set phrases, with one being restricted and the other one being the overwhelming used option.

44. 不思議の国へようこそ。

Fushigi no kuni e yōkoso.

Welcome to Wonderland.

45. 不思議 {な ○ ・ の X} 現象が起きた。

Fushigi [na ○/no X] genshō ga okita.

A mysterious phenomenon has occurred.

Na vs. No: Dependent Clause

While there is great variation as to whether one should use *no* の or *na* な, the decision as to which should be used shifts almost entirely to *na* な whenever it functions as the end of a dependent clause modifying a noun. For example, in Ex. 46 *kareshi* 彼氏 is being modified by [*aishō ga saiaku da* 相性が最悪だ], which makes *saiaku* 最悪 seem more like a noun that happens to be next to the copula in the form of *na* な.

46. 今週、相性が最悪な彼氏と別れました。

Konshu, aishō ga saiaku na kareshi to wakaremashita.

This week, I broke up with my boyfriend who I had the worst compatibility with.

Adjective + No の

There is a small handful of adjectives with which *no* の attaches itself in peculiar ways. One

normal

such example is *nakayoshi* 仲良し, the original form of *naka ga ii* 仲がいい. This can in fact be used as a *no*-adjective as seen below.

きょう ふたり なかよ
47. 今天も2人は仲良しだった。
Kyō mo futari wa nakayoshi datta.
The two got along well today as well.

なかよ ともだち
48. 仲良しの友達がいない。
Nakayoshi no tomodachi ga inai.
I don't have any close friends.

Lastly, though they are few in number, there are examples of *no* の attaching to the stem of adjectives in literary language. They are always replaceable with something else, but they're interesting to know about.

なが わか
49a. 永の別れとなった。(Old-fashioned/literary)
Naga no wakare to natta.
えいえん わか
49b. 永遠の別れとなった。
Eien no wakare to natta.
It became an eternal separation.

うるわ めがみ
50. 麗しの女神
Uruwashi no megami
An outstandingly beautiful goddess

第52課: Adjectives: 多い *Ōi* & 少ない *Sukunai*

The adjectives *ōi* 多い and *sukunai* 少ない respectively mean “many” and “few” respectively. As straight forward as that may seem, using these words poses its own problems.

おお ともだち
i. 多い友達がいます。X
Ōi tomodachi ga imasu.
I have many friends.

じもと すく てんぽ
ii. 地元には少ない店舗があります。X
Jimoto ni wa sukunai tempo ga arimasu.
There are few stores at my home town.

As these examples show, they cannot be used like all other adjectives in directly modifying a noun like *kawaii* 可愛い (cute) can.

iii. あのカメは可愛いですね。
Ano kame wa kawaii desu ne.
That turtle is cute, isn't it?

iv. 教室には可愛いカメがいます。
Kyōshitsu ni wa kawaii kame ga imasu.
There is a cute turtle in the classroom.

In this lesson, we will look intently at what exactly defines these adjectives and how they are unique. We will now investigate further into how these two adjectives are used so that you don't fall victim to the many mistakes that few students don't end up making.

Quantity

Interestingly, both *ōi* 多い and *sukunai* 少ない may be used at the end of the sentence without problem, but they differ regarding their ability to precede nouns.

1. 公園にはベンチが多いです。
Kōen ni wa benchi ga ōi desu.
There are many benches in the park.

2. 公園には、多いベンチがあります。X
Kōen ni wa, ōi benchi ga arimasu.
There are many benches in the park.

3. この周辺には、ベンチが多い公園があります。
Kono shūhen ni wa, benchi ga oi kōen ga arimasu.
There is a park with many benches nearby.

4. 私はお金が少ないです。
Watashi wa okane ga sukunai desu.
I have little money.

5. 少ないお金で暮らす人がたくさんいます。
Sukunai okane de kurasu hito ga takusan imasu.
There is a lot of people who live with little money.

6. 店舗が少ないところに住んでいます。
Tempo ga sukunai tokoro ni sunde imasu.
I live in a place where there are few stores.

As you can see, it is not always the case that *sukunai* 少ない can't directly precede and

normal

modify a noun. It also happens to be the case that both can be before a noun if part of a dependent clause modifying a noun.

Grammatical Restraint

Because these adjectives indicate quantity/size of something, there must be an element in the sentence indicating what the quantity/size is. When using these adjectives as the predicate of the sentence, you must use the pattern "X wa Y ga Z", with these adjectives being Z. The subject can only be dropped if the information has already been supplemented in context.

7. シアトルでは雨が多いです。
Shiatoru de wa ame ga ōi desu.
There is a lot of rain in Seattle.

Word Note: Both *ōi* 多い and *sukunai* 少ない can be used to indicate frequency.

8. テキサス州では雨が少なくてすく。
Tekisasu-shū de wa ame ga sukunai desu.
There is little rain in Texas.

9. 沖縄の料理は量が大きいですね。
Okinawa no ryōri wa ryō ga ōi desu ne.
The portions are large in Okinawan cuisine.

10. なぜ高級料理は量が少なくてすくのですか。
Naze kōkyū ryōri wa ryō ga sukunai no desu ka?
Why is it that the portions are small in high class cuisine?

Word Note: Unlike in English, the word *ryō* 量 (quantity) and any word with it are used as if they are countable entities. This is because aside from meaning that there is “few” or “many” of something, they may also indicate the size of quantity. Incidentally, *chiisai* 小さい and *ōkii* 大きい may occasionally be used in relation to physical entities, but *sukunai* 少ない and *ōi* 多い are used almost always.

11. 建物が多いです。(?)
Tatemono ga ōi desu.
There are many buildings.

12. 漢字が少なくてすくです。(?)
Kanji ga sukunai desu.

There are few Kanji.

Context Note: If the context as for what the quantity statement these adjectives describe is not clear, obvious, and or stated, their use becomes ungrammatical. This, however, is no different than English.

13. ^{とうきょう}「東京はどうでしたか。」^{たてもの おお}「建物が多かったですよ。」
“Tōkyō wa dō deshita ka?” “Tatemono ga ōkatta desu.”
“How was Tokyo?” “There were many buildings.”
14. ^{まち いちば}「町の市場はどうですか」^{おお さかな すく}「大きい魚が少ないです」
“Machi no ichiba wa dō desu ka?” “Ōkii sakana ga sukunai desu.”
“How is the town’s market?” “There are few large fish.”

Now let’s return to how these adjectives are used to directly modify nouns.

15. ^{じんこう おお まち}ムンバイは人口が多い街です。
Mumbai wa jinkō ga ōi machi desu.
Mumbai is a town with a large population.
16. ^{おお まち}ムンバイは多い街です。X
Mumbai wa ōi machi desu.
Mumbai is a large town.
17. ^{かくすう すく}画数が少ない^{かんじ おお}漢字が多い。
Kakusū ga sukunai kanji ga ōi.
There are many Kanji with few strokes.
18. ^{かくすう おお}画数が多い^{かんじ}漢字は、^{じつ おお}実は、多くありません。
Kakusū ga ōi kanji wa, jitsu wa, ōku arimasen.
As for Kanji with many strokes, in actuality, there aren’t that many.
19. ^{すく}少ない^{かんじ}漢字は^{かくすう おお}画数が多くありません。X
Sukunai kanji wa kakusu ga oku arimasen.
Few Kanji don’t have many strokes.

The reason for why *sukunai* 少ない and *ōi* 多い are incapable of directly modifying nouns is that they don’t express the attributes of something. They solely describe quantity. When they are in dependent clauses which then modify a noun, they still only indicate the quantity of whatever is inside the dependent clause with them, and it is only case that that assertion is being used to qualify another noun.

To express “few” and “many” while directly modifying a noun, *sukunai* 少ない and *ōi* 多い must be replaced with *sukoshi no* 少しの and *ōku no* 多くの respectively. However, just normal use you convert to the latter forms, doesn’t mean that there are never any quirks.

20. 大阪には、多くのお寺があるかどうか知りません。
Ōsaka ni wa, ōku no otera ga aru ka dō ka shirimasen.
I don't know whether there are many temples in Osaka.

21. {多くの・たくさんの・大勢の} 人が集まりました。
[Ōku no/takusan no/ōzei no] hito ga atsumarimashita.
Many people gathered.

Word Note: *Takusan no* 沢山の and *ōzei no* 大勢の are *no*-adjectival nouns that, in this situation, are slightly more natural and common than *ōku no* 多くの. This is because both *sukunai* 少ない and *ōi* 多い, and by default, *sukoshi no* 少しの and *ōku no* 多くの, indicate whether an amount exceeds or is below a standard amount, but if there is no standard ascertainable in context, using them becomes somewhat unnatural in contrast to words like *takusan* 沢山 (many) and *wazuka* 僅か (few), which are more emphatic.

22. 少しの金額から大きな稼ぎを作る。
Sukoshi no kingaku kara ōkina kasegi wo tsukuru.
To make large earnings from a small amount of money.

23. 彼はわずかな金額を欲張って1万円の損失を被りました。
Kare wa wazuka na kingaku wo yokubatte ichiman'en no sonshitsu wo kōmurimashita.
He coveted a small amount of money and lost 10,000 yen.

Exceptions with *Sukunai* 少ない

When *sukunai* 少ない is in fact used in directly modifying a noun, its meaning is the same as *wazuka na* わずかな, which is to show the sheer scarcity/lack of quantity. This is made possible because whenever *sukunai* 少ない is used in this way, the parameters are deemed as societal general knowledge, and so there is no need to explicitly 'restate' said parameters.

24. 少ない給料でお金を貯める。
Sukunai kyūryō de okane wo tameru.
To save money with little income.

25. 様々な、少ない材料でできています。
Samazama na, sukunai zaiyō de dekite imasu.
It's made with various, scarce materials.

26. 私たちは今回、もっと少ない時間で達成しました。

normal

Watashitachi wa konkai, motto sukunai jikan de tassei shimashita.
 We accomplished it in far less time this time.

第53課: Adjectives: *Onaji* 同じ

The adjective for same is *onaji* 同じ. As simple as this may be, conjugating it is not. It is for this reason that it has been avoided. Although we haven't looked into why things are the way they are, this is one instance where etymology is rather important to understand how it works.

Not the Same as Other Adjectives

Long ago, *onaji* was like all the other adjectives. It wasn't the only one that ended in /ji/. All the other ones, though, evolved to end in /jii/ instead. It is for this reason we have adjectives like *susamajii* 凄まじい (fierce/tremendous) and *mutsumajii* 睦まじい (harmonious). Had it remained as *onashi* like it was even further back in time, it might be just like all the other adjectives, but now its conjugations are hybrid between adjectives and adjectival nouns.

Form	Plain Speech	Polite Speech
Non-Past	同じだ <i>Onaji da</i>	同じです <i>Onaji desu</i>
Past	同じだった <i>Onaji datta</i>	同じでした <i>Onaji deshita</i>
Negative	同じ {では・じゃ} ない <i>Onaji [de wa/ja] nai</i>	同じ {では・じゃ} ないです <i>Onaji [de wa/ja] nai desu</i> 同じ {では・じゃ} ありません <i>Onaji [de wa/ja] arimasen</i>
Negative Past	同じ {では・じゃ} なかった <i>Onaji [de wa/ja] nakatta</i>	同じ {では・じゃ} なかったです <i>Onaji [de wa/ja] nakatta desu</i> 同じ {では・じゃ} ありませんでした <i>Onaji [de wa/ja] arimasendeshita</i>
Before Nouns	同じ <i>Onaji</i>	
Before Nominalizer <i>No</i> の	同じな <i>Onaji na</i>	
Adverbial Form	同じ <i>Onaji</i>	

normal

	同じく <i>Onajiku</i> 同じに <i>Onaji ni</i> 同じように <i>Onaji yō ni</i>	
Te て Form	同じで <i>Onaji de</i>	同じです <i>Onaji deshite</i>

Although its conjugations are more or less an amalgam of adjectives and adjectival nouns, some of its forms deserve extra addition, and because this is the case, we will spend a little more time seeing how its various forms are used.

Typical Conjugations

けっか おな
 1. 結果は同じだったよ。
Kekka wa onaji datta yo.
 The results were the same.

おな
 2. ずっと同じじゃないですか。
Zutto onaji ja nai desu ka?
 Is it not always the same?

にほんご おな
 3. 日本語と同じですね。
Nihongo to onaji desu ne.
 It's the same as Japanese, huh.

にんげん おな いちばんおお
 4. これは人間と同じで、一番多いのは、ガンです。
Kore wa ningen to onaji de, ichiban ōi no wa, gan desu.
 This is the same as humans, and the most common is cancer.

きのう
 5. 昨日とおんなじだよ。
Kinō to on'naji da yo.
 It's the same as yesterday.

Pronunciation Note: *Onaji* may also emphatically be pronounced as /on'naji/.

Before Nouns

かれ いちねんかん おな ふく き
 6. 彼は、1年間くらい同じ服を着ていました。
 normal

Kare wa, ichinenkan kurai onaji fuku wo kite imashita.
He wore the same clothes for about a year.

7. ほぼ同じ意味です。
おな い み

Hobo onaji imi desu.

It has almost the same meaning.

8. 僕たちは同じ学校に通っています。(Male Speech)
ぼく おな がっこう かよ

Bokutachi wa onaji gakkō ni kayotte imasu.

We go to the same school.

9. 皆同じ穴のムジナだな。
みなおな あな

Mina onaji ana no mujina da na.

They are all birds of a feather.

Phrase Note: The Japanese expression for this is literally “badgers of the same hole.”

10. 私たちは同じ年に生まれました。
わたし おな とし う

Watashitachi wa onaji toshi umare mashita.

We were born in the same year.

11. 私は同い年の人と結婚しています。
わたし おな とし ひと けっこん

Watashi wa onaidoshi no hito to kekkon shite imasu.

I'm married to someone of the same age.

Phrase Note: *Onaidoshi* 同い年 is a set phrase meaning “the same age.”

Before Nominalizer No の

When the particle *no* の is used in turning what precedes into a noun phrase for whatever reason, if *onaji* 同じ is what's directly before it, *na* な must intervene. We've already seen how *no/n desu* (ka) の・んです (か) is used in sentences in seeking an answer, and we learned how *na* な is needed with adjectival nouns. In this case, *onaji* 同じ functions like any other adjectival noun.

12. 音質は、CD と同じなのです。
おんしつ シーディー おな

Onshitsu wa, shiidii to onaji na no desu.

That's because the sound quality is the same as a CD.

13. 何故、惑星の公転方向は同じなんですか。
な ぜ わくせい こうてんほうこう おな

Na ze, wakusei no kōten hōkō wa onaji na n desu ka?

normal

Why is it that the direction of revolution for the planets is the same?

14. 服装が同じなので、見分けがつきにくいですね。

Fukusō ga onaji na node, miwake ga tsukinikui desu ne.

Their clothes are the same, so it's hard to distinguish them, huh.

Particle Note: The particle *node* ので is composed of the particle *no* の and the *te* て form of *da* だ. Put together, *node* ので means “because.”

Adverbial Form: Onaji ni 同じに

15. 私達の結果と同じになりました。

Watashitachi no kekka to onaji ni narimashita.

(Their results) became the same as our results.

16. 全部同じに見えます。

Zembu onaji ni miemasu.

They all look the same.

17. 実印と銀行印を同じにすることはできるんですか。

Jitsuin to ginkōin wo onaji ni suru koto wa dekiru n desu ka?

Is it possible to have one's registered seal the same as one's bank transaction seal?

Adverbial Form: Onaji yō ni 同じように

This form has a meaning of “similarly/like.”

18. スパゲティをレシピと同じように作った。

Supageti wo reshipi to onaji yō ni tsukutta.

I made spaghetti like the recipe.

19. 猫からは周囲が人と同じように見えますか。

Neko kara wa shūi ga hito to onaji yō ni miemasu ka?

Do one's surroundings look the same from a cat's perspective?

20. 普通の人と同じように仕事が出来ません。

Futsū no hito to onaji yō ni shigoto ga dekimasen.

I can't work like normal people.

21. 過去と同じように設定してください。

normal

Kako to onaji yō ni settei shite kudasai.

Please have settings be like they were in the past.

22. ^{さる}猿たちはいつもと同じように^{おな}遊んで^{あそ}います。

Sarutachi wa itsu mo to onaji yō ni asonde imasu.

The monkeys are playing like they always do.

Adverbial Form: A + Onajiku 同じく + B

The form *onajiku* 同じく is reminiscent of when it was more like a regular adjective. In typical speech and writing, it isn't used that much, but when it is used, its meaning is most similar to "ditto" and "same as."

23. ^{かれ}彼と同じく ^{わたし}私も ^{しゅっしん}イギリス出身です。

Kare to onajiku watashi mo igirisu shusshin desu.

Ditto to him, I too am from England.

24. ^{きのう}昨日と同じく ^{きょう}今日も ^{あめ}雨だ。

Kinō to onajiku kyō mo ame da.

Same as yesterday, today is also rain.

25a. ^き軌を ^{おな}同じくする。

Ki wo onajiku suru.

25b. ^き軌を ^{いつ}一にする

Ki wo itsu ni suru.

To have the same way of doing.

26a. ^{こころざし}志 ^{おな}を同じくする。

Kokorozashi wo onajiku suru.

26b. ^{たにん}他人と同じように ^{おな}感じる。 ^{かん}

Tanin to onaji yō ni kanjiru.

To be like-minded.

Adverbial Form: Onaji 同じ

When used in conjunction with the particle *nara* なら, which creates "if" statements when making suggestions, *onaji* 同じ becomes an adverb meaning "anyhow" and is interchangeable with *dōse* どうせ.

おな か じもと か ほう
27. 同じ買うなら、地元で買った方がいい。
Onaji kau nara, jimoto de katta hō ga ii.
Anyhow, if you're going to buy, it's best to buy local.

Grammar Note: Verb + *-ta hō ga ii* た方がいい is a grammatical pattern meaning “it's best to...”

おな う すこ とく
28. 同じ売るなら、少しでも得したい。
Onaji uru nara, sukoshi demo toku shitai.
Anyhow, if I'm going to sell it, I want to get at least some profit.

Grammar Note: Verb + *-tai (to omou)* たい (と思う) is a grammatical pattern meaning “want to...”

おな かね じぶん いえ た おも
29. 同じお金がかかるなら、自分の家を建てたいと思う。
Onaji okane ga kakaru nara, jibun no ie wo tatetai to omou.
Anyhow, if it's going to cost money, I'd want to build my own house.

Dō- 同

You will also discover a lot of words that start with the character 同 when read as *dō* in Sino-Japanese compounds. Most of these words are literary, but this is not always the case. For example, the word for sympathy is *dōjō* 同情, which is simply the characters for “same” and “emotion” put together.

じょうき りょうきやく どうい
30. 上記、利用規約に同意します。
Jōki, riyō kiyaku ni dōi shimasu.
You agree to the above user agreement.

ゆ か り かれし わたし おっと どういつじんぶつ ちが
31. 由香里さんの彼氏と私の夫は同一人物に違いありません！
Yukari-san no kareshi to watashi no otto wa doitsu jimbutsu ni chigai arimasen!
Yukari's boyfriend and my husband are no doubt the exact same individual!

ぜんかい どうよう じっけん かいし
32. 前回と同様に実験を開始しました。
Zenkai to dōyō ni jikken wo kaishi shimashita.
We began the experiment similarly to last time.

えいご どうおんいぎご おし
33. 英語の同音異義語を教えてください。
Eigo no dō'on igigo wo oshiete kudasai.
Please teach me English homophones.

かんごし いしゃ どうとう
34. 看護師は医者と同等ですか。
Kangoshi wa isha to dōtō desu ka?
Are nurses equivalent to doctors?

ひさいしゃ どうじょう
35. 被災者に同情します。
Hisaisha ni dōjō shimasu.
I sympathize with disaster victims.

とうなん くにくに りんごくどうし なか わる
36. 東南アジアの国々も隣国同士は仲が悪いのですか。
Tōnan ajia no kuniguni mo ringoku dōshi wa naka ga warui desu ka?
Why is it that neighboring countries among Southeast Asian nations have such bad relations?

どうし い
37. 同志よ、行くぞ。
Dōshi yo, iku zo!
Comrades, let's go!

Phrase Note: In Mandarin Chinese, 同志 means "homosexual." However, in Japanese, it is a somewhat uncommon word meaning "comrade."

わたし どうせい つ あ
38. 私は同性と付き合っています。
Watashi wa dōsei to tsukiatte imasu.
I'm dating someone of the same sex.

わたし まった どうかん
39. 私も全く同感です。
Watashi mo mattaku dōkan desu.
I completely agree/feel exactly the same way.

がいこくじん どうりょう けんか
40. 外国人の同僚と喧嘩になった。
Gaikokujin no dōryō to kenka ni natta.
I got into an argument with a foreign colleague.

第54課: Counters III (Time: Part I): 日, 週間, 月, 年, Etc.

In this lesson, we will learn about temporal counters. Before doing so, though, we will start off by learning the days of the week, which unfortunately don't involve counters.

Counters Covered in This Lesson

1. -ka 日
2. -*nichi(kan)* 日 (間)

normal -*shūkan* 週間

4. -*gatsu* 月
5. -*kagetsu(kan)* ヶ月 (間)
6. -*tsuki* 月
7. -*nen(kan)* 年 (間)
8. -*kanen* ヶ年
9. -*nensei* 年生
10. -*gakunen* 学年

Yōbi 曜日: The Days of the Week

The days of the week, *yōbi* 曜日, in Japanese each start with the first character of seven luminous bodies in our solar system in the following order: the Sun, moon, Mars, Mercury, Jupiter, Venus and Saturn.

Sunday	<i>Nichiyōbi</i> 日曜日	Monday	<i>Getsuyōbi</i> 月曜日
Tuesday	<i>Kayōbi</i> 火曜日	Wednesday	<i>Suiyōbi</i> 水曜日
Thursday	<i>Mokuyōbi</i> 木曜日	Friday	<i>Kin'yōbi</i> 金曜日
Saturday	<i>Doyōbi</i> 土曜日	What day (of the week)?	<i>Nan'yōbi</i> 何曜日

Reading Note: Theoretically, if you were to want to talk about hypothetical days of the week, you would read 何曜日 as “*naniyōbi*,” but aside from this, it’s always read as above.

All days of the week may be abbreviated by dropping the final *-bi* 日. In abbreviated writing, you will very frequently see days of the week written with only the initial character. They can even be combined to make saying things like “Thursday and Friday” easier. Meaning, instead of writing *mokuyōbi to kin'yōbi* 木曜日と金曜日, you can simply write *mokukin* 木金. This is usually done in the context of scheduling.

1. 一週間の真ん中の日は何曜日ですか。
Isshūkan no man'naka no hi wa nan'yōbi desu ka?
 What is the day of the week that is in the middle of the week?
2. 日曜日の新聞には旅行特集の記事が載っています。
Nichiyōbi no shimbun ni wa ryokō tokushū no kiji ga notte imasu.
 There is a travel supplement article in the Sunday newspaper.
3. 火曜日から木曜日まで働きます。
Kayōbi kara mokuyōbi made hatarakimasu.
 I work from Tuesday to Thursday.

normal

あした なんよう び
4. 明日は何曜（日）ですか？
Ashita wa nan'yō(bi) desu ka?
What day is it tomorrow?

きょう なんようび
5. 今日は何曜日ですか。
Kyō wa nan'yōbi desu ka?
What's today?

もくようび すいようび まえ あと
6. 木曜日は水曜日の前ですか、後ですか？
Mokuyōbi wa suiyōbi no mae desu ka, ato desu ka?
Is Thursday before or after Wednesday?

あさって どうよう
7. 明後日は土曜です。
Asatte wa doyō desu.
The day after tomorrow is Saturday.

にちようび がくせい がっこう い
8. なぜ日曜日に学生は学校に行かないんですか。
Naze nichiyōbi ni gakusei wa gakkō ni ikanai n desu ka?
Why don't students go to school on Sunday?

すいようび き
9. 水曜日に来てください。
Suiyōbi ni kite kudasai.
Please come on Wednesday.

にちようび いちしゅうかん はじ ひ どうようび お ひ
10. 日曜日は一週間の初めの日で、土曜日は終わりの日だ。
Nichiyōbi wa issshūkan no hajime no hi de, doyōbi wa owari no hi da.
Sunday is the first day of the week, and Saturday is the last day.

Exercises:

1. Try to use the Japanese days of the week rather than in English. Get others involved to help you remember them.
2. Write out the days of the week in order 10 times.

Hinichi 日にち: Days of the Month

You would expect the days of the month to be the same as how you count days in general. Although this is somewhat true, several days of the month utilize native words, hybrids of Sino-Japanese and native parts, and set readings. 1-10 are especially complicated.

normal

1日	ついたち <i>Tsuitachi</i>	2日	ふつか <i>Futsuka</i>	3日	みっか <i>Mikka</i>
4日	よっか <i>Yokka</i>	5日	いつか <i>Itsuka</i>	6日	むいか <i>Muika</i>
7日	なのか <i>Nanoka</i>	8日	ようか <i>Yōka</i>	9日	このか <i>Kokonoka</i>
10日	とおか <i>Tōka</i>	11日	じゅういちにち <i>Jūichinichi</i>	12日	じゅうににち <i>Jūninichi</i>
13日	じゅうさんにち <i>Jūsan'nichi</i>	14日	じゅうよっか <i>Jūyokka</i>	15日	じゅうごにち <i>Jūgonichi</i>
16日	じゅうろくにち <i>Jūrokunichi</i>	17日	じゅうしちにち <i>Jūshichinichi</i>	18日	じゅうはちにち <i>Jūhachinichi</i>
19日	じゅうくにち <i>Jūkunichi</i>	20日	はつか <i>Hatsuka</i>	21日	にじゅういちにち <i>Nijūichinichi</i>
22日	にじゅうににち <i>Nijūninichi</i>	23日	にじゅうさんにち <i>Nijūsan'nichi</i>	24日	にじゅうよっか <i>Nijūyokka</i>
25日	にじゅうごにち <i>Nijūgonichi</i>	26日	にじゅうろくにち <i>Nijūrokunichi</i>	27日	にじゅうしちにち <i>Nijūshichinichi</i>
28日	にじゅうはちにち <i>Nijūhachinichi</i>	29日	にじゅうくにち <i>Nijūkunichi</i>	30日	さんじゅうにち <i>Sanjūnichi</i>
31日	さんじゅういちにち <i>Sanjūichinichi</i>	何日	なんにち <i>Nan'nichi</i>		

Reading Notes:

1. *Tsuitachi* ついたち is a contraction of *tsukitachi* つきたち, which means “the start of the month.” The 1st may also be *ippi* いっぴ in the business world.
2. The native counter for days is *-ka* 日. It is seen in several of these phrases.
3. 7日 is traditionally read as “*nanuka* なぬか” and is still somewhat used.
4. The last day of a month is called “*misoka* 晦・三十日.” New Year's Eve is “*Ōmisoka* 大晦日.”
5. The first three days of the New Year is called “*sanganichi* 三が日.”

Particle Note: The particle *ni* に usually follows these phrases whenever “in/on” would be used in English. However, it can frequently be omitted.

きょう なんにち
normal 明日は何日ですか。

Kyō wa nan'nichi desu ka?
What day is it?

11. 7 日の朝 (に) 到着しました。
Nanoka no asa (ni) tōchaku shimashita.
I arrived on the morning of the seventh.

12. 九州では5日からたくさん雨が降っています。
Kyūshū de wa itsuka kara takusan ame ga futte imasu.
In Kyushu, a lot of rain has been falling since the fifth.

13. 11 日に、海に浮いている象を海軍の船を見つけました。
Jūichinichi ni, umi ni uite iru zō wo gun ga mitsukemashita.
On the eleventh, a navy vessel found an elephant floating in the ocean.

14. 横浜港で 14 日 (に) ヒアリが500匹くらい見つかりました。
Yokohama-kō de jūyokka (ni) hiari ga gohyappiki kurai mitsukarimashita.
About 500 fire ants were found on the fourteenth in the Port of Yokohama.

Nissū 日数: Number of Days

Days are counted with *-nichi(kan)* 日 (間) . *-kan* 間 is not obligatory but is used to prevent ambiguity except with the number 1. Very rarely, you'll see it used with *-kan* 間 in things like forms. Incidentally, except for "one day," all day phrases that were exceptional above are used instead with little exception.

1	いちにち	2	ふつか (かん)	3	みっか (かん)
4	よっか (かん)	5	いつか (かん)	6	むいか (かん)
7	なのか (かん) なぬか (かん)	8	ようか (かん)	9	このか (かん)
10	とおか (かん)	14	じゅうよっか (かん)	17	じゅうしちにち (かん) じゅうななにち (かん)
19	じゅうくにち (かん)	20	はつか (かん)	24	にじゅうよっか (かん)
27	にじゅうしちにち (かん)	29	にじゅうくにち (かん)	30	さんじゅうにち (かん)

normal

	にじゅうななにち (かん)				
50	ごじゅうにち (かん)	100	ひゃくにち (かん)	?	なんにち (かん)

15. このソフトウェアを 30 日間無料で使いました。
Kono sofutowea wo sanjūnichikan muryō de tsukaimashita.
 I used this software for free for 30 days.

16. ヨーロッパを10日間旅行しました。
Yōroppa wo tokakan ryokō shimashita.
 I traveled Europe for ten days.

17. 宮古島に3日間旅行しました。
Miyako-jima ni mikkakan ryokō shimashita.
 I traveled to Miyako-jima for three days.

18. 配達には2日(間)かかります。
Haitatsu ni wa futsuka(kan) kakarimasu.
 It takes two days for delivery.

Grammar Note: *-kan* 間 is frequently omitted when the verb *kakaru* かかる is used. This verb, in the sense of time, indicates how long something takes to transpire.

19. 熱が6日間続きました。
Netsu ga muikakan tsuzukimashita.
 The/my fever continued for six days.

20. 何日(間)滞在する予定ですか。
Nan'nichi(kan) taizai suru yotei desu ka?
 How long will you stay?

***-shūkan* 週間: Weeks**

The word for “week” is *shū(kan)* 週 (間) . To say “this week,” you use the word *konshū* 今週. For “last week,” you use *senshū* 先週. Like their English counterparts not being used with the prepositions “in” or “on,” neither *konshū* 今週 nor *senshū* 先週 are typically used with the particle *ni* に. To count weeks, you use the word for week in the form *-shūkan* 週間 as a counter.

1	いっしゅうかん	2	にしゅうかん	3	さんしゅうかん
4	よんしゅうかん	5	ごしゅうかん	6	ろくしゅうかん
7	ななしゅうかん	8	はちしゅうかん はっしゅうかん	9	きゅうしゅうかん
10	じゅうしゅうかん じっしゅうかん	100	ひゃくしゅうかん	?	なんしゅうかん

いっしゅうかん な の か かん
21. 一週間は七日（間）です。
Isshūkan wa nanoka(kan) desu.
A week is seven days.

しごと しゅっちょう にしゅうかんす
22. 仕事でモスクワに出張して、（そこで）2週間過ごしました。
Shigoto de Mosukuwa ni shutchō shite, (soko de) nishūkan sugoshimashita.
I went on a business trip to Moscow for work, and I spent two weeks (there).

こんしゅう にっしょく お
23. 今週は日食が起きます。
Konshū wa nisshoku ga okimasu.
This week, there's going to be a solar eclipse.

せんしゅう てんき よ
24. 先週も天気が良かったです。
Senshū mo tenki ga yokatta desu.
The weather was also good last week.

はつ か まるいっしゅうかんゆき ふ つづ
25. 20日から丸一週間雪が（降り）続きました。
Hatsuka kara maru-issshūkan yuki ga (furi)tsuzukimashita.
Snow continued to fall for a whole week since the twentieth.

しゅうかん ねが
26. 明日から3週間お願いします。
Asu/ashita kara sanshūkan onegai shimasu.
For three weeks from tomorrow, please.

Reading Note: *Asu* is slightly politer than *ashita*, which makes it very likely in a sentence like this.

***Tsuki no Yobikata* 月の呼び方: The Months**

The names of the months (*tsuki* 月) are simply expressed with the number of the month plus the counter -*gatsu* 月.

normal

January	いちがつ <i>Ichigatsu</i>	February	にがつ <i>Nigatsu</i>	March	さんがつ <i>Sangatsu</i>
April	しがつ <i>Shigatsu</i>	May	ごがつ <i>Gogatsu</i>	June	ろくがつ <i>Rokugatsu</i>
July	しちがつ <i>Shichigatsu</i>	August	はちがつ <i>Hachigatsu</i>	September	くがつ <i>Kugatsu</i>
October	じゅうがつ <i>Jūgatsu</i>	November	じゅういちがつ <i>Jūichigatsu</i>	December	じゅうにがつ <i>Jūnigatsu</i>
?	なんがつ <i>Nangatsu</i>				

Reading Note: As you can see, April and September use the not so frequently used variants of 4 and 9. You should also note that July is *shichigatsu* しちがつ instead of *nanagatsu* なながつ, which is only dialectical.

27. 日本では新学期は4月に始まります。
Nihon de wa shingakki wa shigatsu ni hajimarimasu.
 In Japan, new semesters begin in April.

28. 私は1月19日に大阪に引っ越しました。
Watashi wa ichigatsu jūkunichi ni Ōsaka ni hikkoshimashita.
 I moved to Osaka on January 19th.

29. 彼女は5月の終わりにカナダに向かいました。
Kanojo wa gogatsu no owari ni Kanada ni mukaimashita.
 She headed for Canada at the end of May.

30. 僕の誕生日は11月16日です。
Boku no tanjōbi wa jūichigatsu jūrokunichi desu.
 My birthday is on November 16th.

31. クリスマスは12月25日ですね。
Kurisumasu wa jūnigatsu nijūgonichi desu ne?
 Christmas is on December 25th, right?

The Suffix *-jun* 旬

-jun 旬 means "tens days of a month" and is used in the following phrases.

normal

上旬	じょうじゅん <i>Jōjun</i>	First ten days of the month
中旬	ちゅうじゅん <i>Chūjun</i>	Middle ten days of the month
下旬	げじゅん <i>Gejun</i>	Last ten days of the month

32. 3 月 上 旬 に 発 表 し ま す。
Sangatsu jōjun ni happyo shimasu.
 We will announce it in the first ten days of next month.

33. 9 月 中 旬 に 出 張 す る こ と に な り ま し た。
Kugatsu chūjun ni shutchō suru koto ni narimashita.
 I am to go on a business trip in mid-September.

34. 11 月 下 旬 に 発 売 し た。
Jūichigatsu gejun ni hatsubai shita.
 it went on sale in the latter part of November.

Period of Months

-kagetsu(kan) ヶ月 (間)

To generically count months, you must use the counter *-kagetsu(kan)* ヶ月 (間) .

1	いっかげつ (かん)	2	にかげつ (かん)	3	さんかげつ (かん)
4	よんかげつ (かん)	5	ごかげつ (かん)	6	ろっかげつ (かん)
7	ななかげつ (かん)	8	はちかげつ (かん) はっかげつ (かん)	9	きゅうかげつ (かん)
10	じゅっかげつ (かん) じっかげつ (かん)	100	ひゃっかげつ (かん)	?	なんかげつ (かん)

35. 一 ヶ 月 は 約 4 週 間 です。
Ikkagetsu wa yaku-yonshūkan desu.
 There are about four weeks in a month.

に か げつぶん はら
36. 2ヶ月分を払いました。
Nikagetsu-bun wo haraimashita.
I paid two months' worth.

さん か げつ かん ともだち あ
37. 3ヶ月（間）友達に会っていなかった。
Sankagetsu(kan) tomodachi ni atte inakatta.
I hadn't met my friends in three months.

ご か げつかんおも きん
38. 5ヶ月間思いっきり筋トレしています。
Gokagetsu(kan) omoikkiri kintore shite imasu.
I've been weight training wholeheartedly for five months.

-tsuki 月

In the spoken language, month periods are often expressed with native phrases for 1-4 as seen below with the counter *-tsuki* 月. Historically, this counter could be used with more numbers. For instance, there is an old phrase, *totsuki tōka* 十月十日, which refers to day 10 of the 10th month to refer to how long pregnancy typically is. Outside of such set phrases, though *-tsuki* 月 is not outside the numbers 1-4.

1	ひとつき	2	ふたつき	3	みつき	4	よつき
---	------	---	------	---	-----	---	-----

ひとつきさんぜんえん
39. 一月3000円です！
Hitotsuki sanzen'en desu!
It's 3,000 yen a month!

つき つき ま
40. ふた月でも、み月でも待ちます。
Futatsuki demo, mitsuki demo machimasu.
I will wait, whether it be two months or even three months.

みっか みつき かま
41. 三日でも三月でも構いませんよ。
Mikka demo mitsuki demo kamaimasen yo.
I don't mind if it's three days or three months.

やちん つき いっ か げつ
42. 家賃は {ひと月・1ヶ月} いくらですか。
Yachin wa [hitotsuki/ikkagetsu] ikura desu ka?
How much is rent per month?

つきづき えんじょ に か げつ つき とどこお
12 月々の援助は {2ヶ月・ふた月} 滞っています。
normal

Tsukizuki no enjo wa [nikagetsu/futatsuki] todokotte imasu.
(My) monthly support is two months behind.

Period of Years

-nen(kan) 年 (間)

The counter for year is -nen(kan) 年 (間) . This counter is also one of the handful of counters in which 4 must be read as "yo よ."

1	いちねん (かん)	2	にねん (かん)	3	さんねん (かん)
4	よねん (かん)	5	ごねんかん	6	ろくねん (かん)
7	ななねん (かん) しちねん (かん)	8	はちねん (かん)	9	きゅうねん (かん) くねん (かん)
10	じゅうねん (かん)	14	じゅうよねん (かん)	100	ひゃくねん (かん)

When used to refer to what year it is, -kan 間 is never used. Generally, there are no differences with how numbers are counted when used to refer to what year it is. However, it is worth noting that 2007 and 2009 are typically read as “*nisenshichinen* にせんしちねん” and “*nisenkunen* にせんくねん” respectively, although “*nisen'nananen* にせんななねん” and “*nisenkyūnen* にせんきゅうねん” respectively are also common. The same goes for 2017, 2019, etc.

44. ^{たいわんご} 台湾語を ^{さんねんかんべんきょう} 3年間勉強しています。
Taiwango wo san'nenkan benkyō shite imasu.
I've been studying Taiwanese for three years.

45. ^ご マレー (シア) ^{しゅうとく} 語を習得するの ^{ごねん} に ^{かん} 5年 (間) ^す かかりました。
Marē(shia)go wo shūtoku suru no ni gonen(kan) kakarimashita.
It took me five years to acquire Malay.

46. ^{わたし} 私は ^{みなみ} 南 ^{じゅうねん} アフリカに ^{かん} 10年 (間) ^す 住んでいました。
Watashi wa Minami Afurika ni jūnen(kan) sunde imashita.
I once lived in South Africa for ten years.

47. ^{ほしょう} 保証は ^{ごねんかん} 5年間です。
Hoshō wa gonenkan desu.
The warranty is for five years.

かれ はちねんかんせんせい

48. 彼は8年間先生をしています。
Kare wa hachinenkan sensei wo shite imasu.
He has been a teacher for eight years.

ひづけ にせんじゅうしちねんねんしがつにじゅうにち

49. 日付は 2017 年4月 22 日です。
Hizuke wa nisenjūshichinen shigatsu nijūninichi desu.
The date is April 22nd, 2017.

ことし へいせいにじゅうくねん

50. 今年は平成 29 年です。
Kotoshi wa Heisei nijūkunen desu.
This year is Heisei Year 29.

Culture Note: In Japan, alongside the Western date system, there is traditional date system that utilizes the eras of emperors. The current era is called the Heisei Period (*Heisei Jidai* 平成時代).

-kanen ケ年

The counter *-kanen* ケ年 translates as “over...years” and is frequently employed in legislation and business settings. However, *ikkanen* 1ケ年 is infrequently used because “one year” is typically too short for major projects to take place.

1	いっかねん △	2	にかねん	3	さんかねん	4	よんかねん
5	ごかねん	6	ろっかねん	7	ななかねん	8	はちかねん はっかねん
9	きゅうかねん	10	じゅっかねん じっかねん	100	ひゃっかねん	?	なんかねん

ごかねんけいかく じっし

51. 5ケ年計画を実施しました。
Gokanen keikaku wo jissshi shimashita.
We implemented a five-year plan.

じゅっかねん せんりやく じつげん

52. 10ケ年の戦略を実現しました。
Jukkanen no senryaku wo jitsugen shimashita.
We actualized a 10-year strategy.

あら さんかねんすうちもくひょう はっぴょう

53. 新たな3ケ年数値目標を発表しました。
normal ina sankanen suchi mokuhyō wo happyō shimashita.

We announced a new three-year target value.

われわれ にか ねん けんきゅう ちゃくしゅ
54. 我々は2ヶ年にわたる研究に着手しました。
Wareware wa nikanen ni wataru kenkyū ni chakushu shimashita.
We embarked a two-year long study.

じんせいごじゅう か ねんけいかく た
55. 人生 50 ヶ年計画を立てました。
Jinsei gojukkanen keikaku wo tatemashita.
I made a fifty-year life plan.

-nensei 年生

The counter *-nensei* 年生 is used to indicate what grade in school someone is in.

1	いちねんせい	2	にねんせい	3	さんねんせい	4	よねんせい
5	ごねんせい	6	ろくねんせい	7	ななねんせい	8	はちねんせい
9	きゅうねんせい	10	じゅうねんせい	?	なんねんせい		

It is important to note that after 6, the only time one would use this counter would be when referencing the American school system which is divided into 12 grade levels. Although the Japanese education system is also divided into 12 grades, what they're called is not the same.

Grade 1	<i>Shōgakkō ichinen</i> 小学校1年	<i>Shō-ichi</i> 小1
Grade 2	<i>Shōgakkō ninen</i> 小学校2年	<i>Shō-ni</i> 小2
Grade 3	<i>Shōgakkō san'nen</i> 小学校3年	<i>Shō-san</i> 小3
Grade 4	<i>Shōgakkō yonen</i> 小学校4年	<i>Shō-yon</i> 小4
Grade 5	<i>Shōgakkō gonen</i> 小学校5年	<i>Shō-go</i> 小5
Grade 6	<i>Shōgakkō rokunen</i> 小学校6年	<i>Shō-roku</i> 小6
Grade 7	<i>Chūgakkō ichinen</i> 中学校1年	<i>Chū-ichi</i> 中1
Grade 8	<i>Chūgakkō ninen</i> 中学校2年	<i>Chū-ni</i> 中2
Grade 9	<i>Chūgakkō san'nen</i> 中学校3年	<i>Chū-san</i> 中3
Grade 10	<i>Kōkō ichinen</i> 高校1年	<i>Kō-ichi</i> 高1
Grade 11	<i>Kōkō ninen</i> 高校2年	<i>Kō-ni</i> 高2
Grade 12	<i>Kōkō san'nen</i> 高校3年	<i>Kō-san</i> 高3

normal

いちねんせい き
56. 1年生がたくさん来ました。
Ichinensei ga takusan kimashita.
A lot of first graders came.

ぼく きょねんちゅうがくにねんせい
57. 僕は去年中学2年生でした。
Boku wa kyonen chūgaku ninensei deshita.
I was in eighth grade last year.

かのじょ いま だいがく よねんせい
58. 彼女は今ハーバード大学の4年生です。
Kanojo wa ima Hābādo Daigaku no yonensei desu.
She is now a senior at Harvard.

-gakunen 学年

Gakunen 学年 means “academic year” and can also be used as a counter to count them.

1	いちがくねん	2	にがくねん	3	さんがくねん	4	よんがくねん
5	ごがくねん	6	ろがくねん	7	なながくねん しちがくねん	8	はちがくねん
9	きゅうがくねん	10	じゅうがくねん	11	じゅういちがくねん	?	なんがくねん

いちがくねん がくしゅう ないよう してい
59. 1学年で学習する内容を指定しました。
Ichigakunen de gakushū suru naiyō wo shitei shimashita.
We designated what material is to be studied in one academic year.

にがくねんさ きょうだい
60. 2学年差の兄弟がいます。
Nigakunen-sa no kyōdai ga imasu.
I have siblings two grades apart (from me).

第55課: Counters IV (Time: Part II): 時, 時間, 分, 秒, 晩, 夜

In part two of our coverage on temporal counters, we'll learn how to tell time and understand a little bit more about time in general.

Counters Covered in This Lesson

1. -*jikan* 時間

normal -*ji* 時

3. -*fun(kan)* 分 (間)
4. -*byō(kan)* 秒 (間)
5. -*ban* 晩
6. -*ya/-yo* 夜

Hours

-jikan 時間

The counter *-jikan* 時間 is used to count the number of hours. Do note that 4 must be read as “yo よ” with this counter.

1	いちじかん	2	にじかん	3	さんじかん	4	よじかん
5	ごじかん	6	ろくじかん	7	ななじかん しちじかん	8	はちじかん
9	くじかん	10	じゅうじかん	14	じゅうよじかん	?	なんじかん

はねだくこう い よじかん
1. 羽田空港に行くのに4時間かかりました。
Haneda Kūkō ni iku no ni yojikan kakarimashita.
It took four hours to go to Haneda Airport.

はくぶつかん なんじかんす
2. 博物館で何時間過ごしましたか。
Hakubutsukan de nanjikan sugoshimashita?
How many hours did you spend at the museum?

はちじかんけいか
3. スタートから8時間経過しています。
Sutāto kara hachijikan keika shite imasu.
Eight hours have passed since the start (of this).

まいにち じゅうじかん べんきょう いちねんかんつづ
4. 毎日、10時間の勉強を1年間続けました。
Mainichi, jūjikan no benkyō wo ichinenkan tsuzukemashita.
I have continued my ten-hour studies every day for a year.

ぼく まいしゅう ご じゅうじかん べんきょう
5. 僕は毎週、アイヌ語を10時間 {くらい・ほど} 勉強しています。
Boku wa maishū, Ainugo wo jūjikan [kurai/hodo] benkyō shite imasu.
I'm studying Ainu for about ten hours every week.

さくや ひさ はちじかんね
6. 昨夜は久しぶりに8時間寝ました！

normal

Sakuya wa hisashiburi ni hachijikan nemashita!
Last night, I slept eight years for the first time in a while!

にじゅうよじかんえいぎょう
7. あのファミレスも 24 時間営業をやめたんですね。
Ano famiresu mo nijūyōjikan mo eigyō wo yameta n desu ne.
That family restaurant also quit their twenty-four service, huh.

-ji 時

0:00	れいじ (零時)	1:00	いちじ	2:00	にじ
3:00	さんじ	4:00	よじ	5:00	ごじ
6:00	ろくじ	7:00	しちじ ななじ	8:00	はちじ
9:00	くじ	10:00	じゅうじ	11:00	じゅういちじ
12:00	じゅうにじ	13:00	じゅうさんじ	14:00	じゅうよじ
15:00	じゅうごじ	16:00	じゅうろくじ	17:00	じゅうしちじ じゅうななじ
18:00	じゅうはちじ	19:00	じゅうくじ	20:00	にじゅうじ
21:00	にじゅういちじ	22:00	にじゅうにじ	23:00	にじゅうさんじ
24:00	にじゅうよじ	?	なんじ		

In Japan, military time is frequently used. Although phrases for “A.M” and “P.M” exist, we’ll first see how 0:00 through 24:00 are expressed with the counter *-ji 時*. Do note that 4 must be read as “yo よ” with this counter.

As 0:00 and 24:00 are synonymous, speakers will typically default to 0:00 to refer to midnight. In colloquial speech, the words *zero* ゼロ and *nijūyon* にじゅうよん often replace the above expressions to refer to midnight. Above, you’ll notice that *nanaji* ななじ and *jūnanaji* じゅうななじ are possible readings for 7:00 and 17:00 respectively. These readings are dialectical at best, or pronunciations only appropriate when making oneself as clear as possible, but they are not viewed as the ‘correct’ readings of these phrases.

わたし かぞくよにん はちじ こうえん い
8. 私たちは家族4人で8時に公園に行きました。
Watashitachi wa kazoku yonin de hachiji ni kōen ni ikimashita.
We went to the park at eight o’ clock as a family of four.

じゅうよじ お
normal 4 時に起こしてください。

Jūyoji ni okoshite kudasai.
Wake me up at 2 P.M.

いま なんじ
12. 今、何時ですか。
Ima, nanji desu ka?
What time is it now?

しゃいん じゅうしち じ たいしゃ
13. ほとんどの社員が 17 時に退社した。
Hotondo no shain ga jūshichiji ni taisha shita.
Most of the company employees left work at 5 P.M.

まいあさ エヌエイチケーそうごう しちじだい み
14. 毎朝、 NHK 総合テレビの 7 時台のニュースを見ます。
Maiasa, enueichikē sōgō terebi no shichiji-dai no nyūsu wo mimasu.
Every morning, I watch the news from the 7 o' clock hour on NHK General TV.

Pronunciation Note: NHK stands for “*Nippon Hōsō Kyōkai* 日本放送協会” and it is Japan’s national public broadcast organization. Many speakers alternatively pronounce NHK as “eneichikē.”

れいじ あ
15. 零時にシャワーを浴びました。
Reiji ni shawā wo abimashita.
I took a shower at midnight?

なんじ かいてん
16. 何時に開店しますか。
Nanji ni kaiten shimasu ka?
At what time do you open?

なんじ つ
17. バスは何時に着きますか。
Basu wa nanji ni tsukimasu ka?
At what time does the bus arrive?

く じ あさ はん た じゅうに じ ひる はん じゅうしち じ はや ゆうしょく と
18. 9時に朝ご飯を食べて、 12 時に昼ご飯、 17 時に早めの夕食をすることにしています。
Kuji ni asagohan wo tabete, jūniji ni hirugohan, jūshichiji ni hayame no yūshoku wo toru koto ni shite imasu.
I'm trying to eat breakfast at nine, lunch at twelve, and take an earlier dinner at five.

わたし しち じ がっこう い
19. 私はたいてい 7 時に学校に行きます。
Watashi wa taitei shichiji ni gakkō ni ikimasu.
I generally go to school at seven.

20. 私は16時から晩ご飯の支度とお風呂の掃除をして、18時に晩ご飯を食べます。

normal

Watashi wa jūrokuji kara bangohan no shitaku to ofuro no sōji wo shite, jūhachiji ni bangohan wo tabemasu.

I do preparations for dinner and clean the bath at four and then eat dinner at six.

A.M & P.M

A.M and P.M are replaced by six expressions that come first in a time phrase. They may either be used as nouns or adverbs. As nouns, they refer to the time of day.

5:00~11:00	Gozen 午前/Asa 朝	12 PM	Hiru 昼
11:00~24:00	Gogo 午後	17:00~24:00	Yūgata 夕方
18:00~24:00	Yoru 夜	12 AM~4 AM	Shin'ya 深夜

Word Note: This process can be simplified by simply using *gozen* 午前 for a.m and *gogo* 午後 for p.m.

きょう わたし あさしちじ お
21. 今日、私は朝7時に起きました。
Kyō, watashi wa asa shichiji ni okimashita.
I woke up today at seven in the morning.

ひるじゅうにじ しゅうごう
22. グラウンドに昼12時に集合してください。
Guraundo ni hiru jūniji ni shūgō shite kudasai.
Please gather at the sports ground at twelve noon.

ゆうがたはちじ きたく
23. 夕方8時に帰宅しました。(Written language)
Yūgata hachiji ni kitaku shimashita.
I returned home at eight in the evening.

わたし ごぜんはちじ しゅっしや
24. 私は午前8時に出勤しました。
Watashi wa gozen hachiji ni shussha shimashita.
I went/came to work at 8 A.M.

ごごじゅうじ
25. 午後10時になりました。
Gozen jūji ni narimashita.
It's 10 P.M.

よるくじほうそう
26. 夜9時放送です！
Yoru kuji hōsō desu!
This is a 9 P.M. broadcast!

わたし しんやさん じ ね あさはち じ お せいかつ つづ
 27. 私 は深夜3時に寝て、朝8時に起きる生活を続けています。
Watashi wa shin'ya sanji ni nete, asa hachiji ni okiru seikatsu wo tsuzukete imasu.
 I continue my life of sleeping at 3 A.M. and waking up at 8 A.M.

-fun(kan) 分 (間)

When counting minutes in the sense of duration, you use *-fun(kan)* 分 (間) . If you are expressing minutes as in time, you only use *-fun* 分. As such, below you'll only see *-fun* 分 reflected in the chart. Just know that you can add *-kan* 間 so long as you're not expressing the time.

1	いっぶん	2	にぶん	3	さんぶん	4	よんぶん
5	ごぶん	6	ろっぶん	7	ななぶん	8	はっぶん はちぶん
9	きゅうぶん	10	じゅっぶん じっぶん	100	ひゃっぶん	?	なんぶん

とうちゃく あ す あさろく じ よんじゅうごぶん
 28. 到着は、明日の朝6時 45 分です。
Tōchaku wa, asu no asa rokuji yonjūgofun desu.
 My/our arrival will be at 6:45 tomorrow morning.

しょたいめんさんじゅっぶん けっこん き ふうふ
 29. 初対面 30 分で結婚を決めた夫婦もいますよ。
Shotaimen sanjuppun de kekkon wo kimeta fūfu mo imasu yo.
 There are also couples who decided to marry just from meeting each other for the first in thirty minutes.

じゅっぶん しぼう も しょうかい
 30. 10 分でお腹の脂肪を燃やすワークアウトをご紹介します。
Juppun de onaka no shibō wo moyasu wakuauto wo go-shōkai shimasu.
 I will introduce to you a workout to burn stomach fat in ten minutes.

にじゅっぶん かん ま
 31. 20 分 (間) 待ちました。
Nijuppun(kan) machimashita.
 I waited for twenty minutes.

よていとお じゅうごじ じゅうよんぶん しながわえき とうちゃく
 32. 予定通り、 15 : 14 に品川駅に到着しました。
Yotei-dōri, jūgoji jūyonpun ni Shinagawa-eki ni tōchaku shimashita.
 As planned, I/we arrived at Shinagawa Station at 3:14 P.M.

Quarter and Half

Like English, there are other phrases that can accompany “o’clock” phrases that roughly indicate minutes. For instance, using *-han* 半 refers to “half past.” There are also phrases that equate to “quarter past” and “quarter to.” However, unlike English, they simply indicate that a certain time has either already past or hasn’t past respectively.

Half Past (...:30)	<i>-han</i> 半
(Quarter) Past (...:15)	<i>-sugi</i> 過ぎ
(Quarter) To (...:15)	<i>-mae</i> 前

いま ごぜんしち じ さんじゅうぶん はん
33. 今、午前7時 { 30 分・半 } です。
Ima, gozen shichiji [sanjuppun/han] desu.
It is 7:30 A.M. now.

ご ごさん じ す さつえい
34. 午後3時過ぎに撮影しました。
Gogo sanji-sugi ni satsuei shimashita.
I photographed/filmed it a little past 3 P.M.

こども ね じかん よるじゅうじまえ かえ
35. 子供の寝る時間、夜10時前に帰ってこないで。
Kodomo no neru jikan, yoru jūji-mae ni kaette konaide.
Don’t come home right before ten when the kids go to sleep.

-byō(kan) 秒 (間)

When counting seconds in the sense of duration, you use *-byō(kan)* 秒 (間) . If you are expressing seconds as in time, you only use *-byō* 秒. As such, below you’ll only see *-byō* 秒 reflected in the chart. Just know that you can add *-kan* 間 so long as you’re not expressing the time.

normal

1	いちびょう	2	にびょう	3	さんびょう	4	よんびょう
5	ごびょう	6	ろくびょう	7	ななびょう	8	はちびょう
9	きゅうびょう	10	じゅうびょう	20	にじゅうびょう	?	なんびょう

36. 一分でも一秒でもいいから。
Ippun demo ichibyō demo ii kara.
 I don't care if it's just for a minute or even a second.

37. 30 秒間瞬き禁止！
Sanjūbyō matataki kinshi!
 Blinking prohibited for 30 seconds!

38. トンネルを通過するのに10秒かかりました。
Ton'neru wo tsūka suru no ni jūbyō kakarimashita.
 It took ten seconds to pass through the tunnel.

39. 後100秒の間に何個の積み木を片付けられるか試してみてください。
Ato hyakubyō no aida ni nanko no tsumiki wo katazukerareru ka tameshite mite kudasai.
 Try seeing how many building blocks you can put up in the 100 seconds left.

Evenings

-ban 晩

-ban 晩 is used to count nights, but it is only used for the following numbers. Typically, this counter is used to count nights as in “stays.” As such, you ought to replace it with -haku 泊 when not literally counting nights once you pass 2.

1	ひとばん	2	ふたばん	3	みばん	?	いくばん
---	------	---	------	---	-----	---	------

Usage Note: *Miban* みばん is only used in the set phrase *mikka miban* 三日三晩, which means “three days and three nights.”

40. 避難所に一晩泊まりました。
Hinanjo ni hitoban tomarimashita.
 I stayed one night at the shelter.

41. 今回は家族6人で二晩泊まりました。
ai wa kazoku rokunin de futaban tomarimashita.

This time, we stayed two nights as a family of six.

ふたばん てつや
42. 二晩徹夜したよ。
Futaban tetsuya shita yo.
I stayed up for two nights.

ふたばん いた
43. 二晩で痛みもなくなった。
Futaban de itami mo nakunatta.
The pain also went away in two nights.

つよ う ひとばん しらが
44. 強いショックを受けて一晩で白髪になった。
Tsuyoi shokku wo ukete hitoban de shiraga ni natta.
I received a great shock and became gray-haired in a night.

ひとばん ねつ さ
45. 一晩で熱が下がりました。
Hitoban de netsu ga sagarimashita.
My fever went down in one night.

-yal-yo 夜

The word for night is *yoru* 夜. To count nights in a literal fashion, you use the counter *-ya* 夜. For 1 and 2, there is also the counter *-yo* 夜; however, it is limited to the written language and seldom used in the spoken language.

1	いちや ひとよ	2	にや ふたよ	3	さんや	4	よんや
5	ごや	6	ろくや	7	ななや	8	はちや
9	きゅうや	10	じゅうや	11	じゅういちや	?	なんや

いちや あ
46. 一夜が明けた。
Ichiya ga aketa.
The following morning dawned.
Literally: One night ended.

だんせい ゆき つ あな そこ ごや す
47. 男性は雪が積もった穴の底で5夜過ごした。
Dansei wa yuki ga tsumotta ana no soko de goya sugoshita.
The man spent five nights at the bottom of a whole covered by snow.

48. 硬いベッドマットで3夜過ごした経験があります。
Katai beddomatto de san'ya sugoshita keiken ga arimasu.
 I've had the experience of spending three nights on a hard bedmat.

49. 旅の荷物を整理して10夜過ごした部屋を後にした。
Tabi no nimotsu wo seiri shite jūya sugoshita heya wo ato ni shita.
 I gathered up my luggage to my journey and left the room I had spent ten nights in.

50. 秋の一夜をゆったりと過ごしてみませんか。
Aki no hitoyo wo yuttari to sugoshite mimasen ka?
 Why not spend an autumn night at ease?

第56課: Absolute Time I: Basic Phrases

Absolute time expressions indicate a relatively exact time frame and are often sensitive to tense. They are generally adverbial nouns. This means that they usually can either function as nouns or adverbs depending on context. So, pay attention to how this affects particle usage.

Absolute Time

The following table shows many single word absolute time phrases in Japanese. Patterns to be discussed in this lesson help fill in the gaps. Take note of patterns. There are word notes after the chart. So, be sure to not overlook them.

Chart Note: Variants are listed from most to least polite. ▽ stands for rare.

時間帯	2...ago	Last...	This...	Next...	2...from now
Day	一昨日 いっさくじつ おととい	昨日 さくじつ きのう	本日、今日 ほんじつ、 こんじつ ▽ こんにち きょう	明日 みょうにち あす あした	明後日 みょうごにち あさって
Morning		今朝 さくちょう	今朝 こんちょう う ▽	明朝 みょうちょう	

normal

			けさ		
Evening	一昨晚 いっさくばん	昨晚・タベ さくばん・ゆうべ	今晚 こんばん	明晩 みょうばん	
Night	一昨夜 いっさくや	昨夜 さくや	今夜 こんや	明夜 みょうや	
Week	先々週 せんせんしゅう	昨週、先週 さくしゅう▽、せんしゅう	今週 こんしゅう	来週 らいしゅう	再来週 さいらいしゅう
Month	先々月 せんせんげつ	先月 せんげつ	今月 こんげつ	来月 らいげつ	再来月 さいらいげつ
Year	一昨年 いっさくねん おとし	昨年、去年 さくねん、きょねん	今年 ことし	来年 らいねん	明後年、再来年 みょうごねん、さいらいねん

Word Notes:

1. 先日 ^{せんじつ} means "the other day". 本月 ^{ほんげつ} (this month) and 本年 ^{ほんねん} (this year) exist, but they are very formal and typically in written addresses. However, note that although 本朝 ^{ほんちょう} exists, it means "our nation" instead of "this morning".

2. Changing 一昨 ^{いっさく} to 一昨々 ^{いっさくさく} creates "3...ago". However, the Chinese readings are not used in the spoken language and should be reserved for the written language. For the native words おととい and おとし, you can さき to get さきおととい (three days ago) and さきおとし (three years ago) respectively. It is these native readings that should be used in actual practice.

3. "3 days from now" can be 明々後日 ^(しあさって・みょうごにち) or 明日の翌々日 ^{あした よくよくじつ}.

4. 今年 may be read as こんねん in certain contexts such as in the phrase 今年度 (this fiscal year).

5. It's funny to note that 明々後日 exists too, and its native counterpart is やのあさって. These words are not really used that often because 4日後 is much easier.

normal

6. 昨 can sometimes be very formal. For instance, 去年 will be used most of the time when speaking. The words 昨春, 昨夏, 昨秋, and 昨冬 are all 書き言葉.

Making other Absolute Time Expressions

The following expressions are very important when you can't use a specific, one word time expression like the ones above. Some of these expressions are not really used and some may be more formal than others. All of these details are discussed in the word notes following the chart.

3...ago	一昨昨+Time Word	2...ago	一昨	Last...	この前の
This/next...	今度の	Today's...	今日の	Next...	この次の
1 after next	翌々 (の)	Day	日	Morning	朝, 午前
Evening	夕方, タベ, 夕暮れ, 晩, 夕	Night	夜, 夜間	Week	週(間)
Month	月, 月間	Year	年, 年(間)		

Word Notes:

1. 夜間, 週間, 月間, and 年間 are all formal and more likely to be used in the written language. 週間 and 年間 are common in the spoken language, but they are still more formal.
2. タベ most frequently means "last night" where it is more common than 昨夜.
3. 夕 is essentially the same as 夕方, but it's often used in set phrases. 夕暮れ is very commonly used, and as the character 暮 suggests, it especially refers to the time when the sun is actually going down. Lastly, 晩 is the closest equivalent to the generic English word "evening" and is a commonly used word.
4. You may use 翌^{よく} for "next" for expressions that use 来^{らい}. Frequency of use depends on the expression. The difference between 翌週 and 来週 would be the same as the difference between "the next week" and "next week" in English. This is the same for the other expressions.
5. 翌々 is usually used without a の. You can use it with days, months, and years. Something like 翌々2016年 would it equate to "2016, the year two years from now". The word is not quite that common, and you are more likely to see it in writing.
6. 一昨々 has the reading いっさくさく. It is not used in the spoken language, and neither are the Sino-Japanese phrases made with it such as 一昨々日 and 一昨々週. For 一昨々

normal

日 and 一昨々年, there are the native readings さきおととい and さきおとし respectively, and they're actually used. So, say you wanted to say Monday three days ago, you would need to say 一昨々日さきおととい げつようびの月曜日.

7. 一昨 for "2...ago" is read as いっさく and is rare. This is mainly due to the fact that it is Sino-Japanese. When it is used, it is appended without the particle の to a time phrase. So, you get phrases like 一昨3日みっか meaning "the third, which was two days ago".

8. If you want to realistically go past two units of time either direction (past or future), it is more practical to say something like 5年前 (five years ago) or 3日前みっかまえ (three days ago). Of course, sometimes one of these cooler phrases like さきおととい (= 3日前). Nevertheless, # + Time Phrase + 前(before)/後(after) is more frequently used once you leave the sphere of the common words like きノウ, きョウ, あした, etc.

Examples

1. 昨夜、10時に寝た。じ ね (More common)

I went to sleep at 10 last night.

2. アニメクラブは7時から零時までです。れいじ

Anime club is from 7 to midnight.

3. きノウ仕事を休みました。

I took a break from work yesterday.

漢字 Note: Words like きョウ and きノウ are frequently written in ひらがな.

4. 彼女は一昨年う生まれました。

She was born the year before last.

5. 翌日じゅぎょう よしゅうの授業の予習をする。

To prepare for the next day's lessons.

Classroom Note: You should always 予習 before your Japanese class to get more out of what your teacher says.

6. 今朝はたいそう寒かったですね。

This morning was quite cold, wasn't it?

normal

7. この前の火曜日におもしろい映画を見ましたよ。
えいが

I saw an interesting movie last Tuesday!

8. 明日の朝8時に起こしてください。
お

Please wake me up at 8 o'clock tomorrow morning.

9. その人は瞬時に（して）猿になった。
しゅんじ さる

That person became a monkey in an instant.

10. 「今年の冬は寒くなるでしょうか」 「天気予報を見ていないので寒いかどうか分かりません」
ことし ふゆ さむ てんきよほう

"Will this winter be cold?" "I don't know whether or not it's going to be cold in the weather forecast."

Times

Times (Frequency): The Counters ～度 VS ～回

Many Japanese speakers will say that 一度 and 一回 are the same, but they actually differentiate them. First, consider the following sentence where they are completely interchangeable.

11. 私はあの本を {2度・2回} 読んだ。
いちど いっかい

I read that book twice.

12. {2度・2回} 目の不渡り
ふ わ た
Second bouncing/non-payment

Despite the fact that they both count the number of times an action occurs, there are instances where you choose them liberally. One restriction is that ～度 can't be used with 第～ or 全～. ～度 is also not used with decimals.

13. 6回連続で参加している。(6回 → 6度 X)
れんぞく さんか

I've been participated six times consecutively.

14. 今年は祭りが2度ある。(2度 → 2回?)
まつ

This year, the festival will come twice.

15. 第4回の関係閣僚協議 (第4度 X)
normal

かんけいかくりようきょうぎ

The fourth relations cabinet conference

16. 平均週3.7回

An average of 3.7 times a week

17. 全^{ぜん}20回のセミナー

All 20 seminars

18. 2度の^{たいけん}体験をよい^い経験として生かす。(2回?)

To use the second experience as a good lesson.

When the number is more than 10, some of these restrictions go away. It's also interesting to note that ～度目 is used twice as much as ～回目. Remember that example with 6回連続? Something like 5年連続100度目 would be completely fine. For instances where they are interchangeable, 回 is more common. However, 度 is particularly common with the number 2. Also, as the number gets larger, 回 is less frequent. So, if a headline were to have "third non-payment" in it, odds are that it would have 3回. If a company somehow did this for the 15th time, we would expect to see 度.

When counting the frequency/repetition of an action in a particular time frame, use ～回. This is in terms of years, days, etc. and doesn't take on details such as minutes, etc. In such case, you'd expect 度. Something like 月に三度 is possible, but this doesn't show frequency.

19. 毎年、この村では祭りを3回行います。

We have festivals three times annually in this village.

～度 would count repetition that is uncertain and or irregular. Other expressions that deal with series or segmenting statistically prefer ～回. One last thing to consider is that ～度 is often used in regards to things that are hard to predict and ～回 is preferred overwhelmingly when the number of times of something can be known beforehand.

20. 10度目の^{ゆうしょう}優勝^{めざ}を目指す。

To aim for the tenth victory.

21. 3年連続3度目の^{れんぞく}優勝^め^{ゆうしょう}

The third consecutive victory in three years

Frequency Note: Remember that ～度目 is generally twice as common as ～回.

22. 4度目の復活は難しい。
ふっかつ
 A fourth restoration is difficult.

23. 3回めのセミナー
 The third seminar

24. 6回目の核実験
かくじっけん
 The sixth nuclear tests after restart

第56課: Absolute Time I: Basic Phrases

Absolute time expressions indicate a relatively exact time frame and are often sensitive to tense. They are generally adverbial nouns. This means that they usually can either function as nouns or adverbs depending on context. So, pay attention to how this affects particle usage.

Absolute Time

The following table shows many single word absolute time phrases in Japanese. Patterns to be discussed in this lesson help fill in the gaps. Take note of patterns. There are word notes after the chart. So, be sure to not overlook them.

Chart Note: Variants are listed from most to least polite. ▽ stands for rare.

時間帯	2...ago	Last...	This...	Next...	2...from now
Day	一昨日 いっさくじつ おととい	昨日 さくじつ きのう	本日、今日 ほんじつ、 こんじつ ▽ こんにちきょう	明日 みょうにち あす あした	明後日 みょうごにち あさって
Morning		昨朝 さくちょう	今朝 こんちょう う▽ けさ	明朝 みょうちょう	
Evening	一昨晚	昨晚・タベ	今晚	明晩	

normal

	いっさくば ん	さくばん・ゆうべ	こんばん	みょうば ん	
Night	一昨夜 いっさくや	昨夜 さくや	今夜 こんや	明夜 みょうや	
Week	先々週 せんせん しゅう	昨週、先週 さくしゅう▽、せ んしゅう	今週 こんしゅ う	来週 らいしゅ う	再来週 さらいしゅう
Month	先々月 せんせんげ つ	先月 せんげつ	今月 こんげつ	来月 らいげつ	再来月 さらいげつ
Year	一昨年 いっさくね ん おとし	昨年、去年 さくねん、きよね ん	今年 ことし	来年 らいねん	明後年、再来年 みょうごねん、さら いねん

Word Notes:

1. 先日 ^{せんじつ} means "the other day". 本月 ^{ほんげつ} (this month) and 本年 ^{ほんねん} (this year) exist, but they are very formal and typically in written addresses. However, note that although 本朝 ^{ほんちょう} exists, it means "our nation" instead of "this morning".

2. Changing 一昨 to 一昨々 creates "3...ago". However, the Chinese readings are not used in the spoken language and should be reserved for the written language. For the native words おととい and おとし, you can さき to get さきおととい (three days ago) and さきおとし (three years ago) respectively. It is these native readings that should be used in actual practice.

3. "3 days from now" can be 明々後日 ^(しあさって・みょうごにち) or 明日の翌々日 ^{あした よくよくじつ}.

4. 今年 may be read as こんねん in certain contexts such as in the phrase 今年度 (this fiscal year).

5. It's funny to note that 明々後日 exists too, and its native counterpart is やのあさって. These words are not really used that often because 4日後 is much easier.

6. 昨 can sometimes be very formal. For instance, 去年 will be used most of the time when sneaking. The words 昨春, 昨夏, 昨秋, and 昨冬 are all 書き言葉.

normal

Making other Absolute Time Expressions

The following expressions are very important when you can't use a specific, one word time expression like the ones above. Some of these expressions are not really used and some may be more formal than others. All of these details are discussed in the word notes following the chart.

3...ago	一昨々+Time Word	2...ago	一昨	Last...	この前の
This/next...	今度の	Today's...	今日の	Next...	この次の
1 after next	翌々 (の)	Day	日	Morning	朝, 午前
Evening	夕方, タベ, 夕暮れ, 晩, 夕	Night	夜, 夜間	Week	週(間)
Month	月, 月間	Year	年, 年(間)		

Word Notes:

1. 夜間, 週間, 月間, and 年間 are all formal and more likely to be used in the written language. 週間 and 年間 are common in the spoken language, but they are still more formal.
2. タベ most frequently means "last night" where it is more common than 昨夜.
3. 夕 is essentially the same as 夕方, but it's often used in set phrases. 夕暮れ is very commonly used, and as the character 暮 suggests, it especially refers to the time when the sun is actually going down. Lastly, 晩 is the closest equivalent to the generic English word "evening" and is a commonly used word.
4. You may use 翌^{よく} for "next" for expressions that use 来^{らい}. Frequency of use depends on the expression. The difference between 翌週 and 来週 would be the same as the difference between "the next week" and "next week" in English. This is the same for the other expressions.
5. 翌々 is usually used without a の. You can use it with days, months, and years. Something like 翌々2016年 would it equate to "2016, the year two years from now". The word is not quite that common, and you are more likely to see it in writing.
6. 一昨々 has the reading いっさくさく. It is not used in the spoken language, and neither are other Sino-Japanese phrases made with it such as 一昨々日^{いっさくさくじつ} and 一昨々週^{いっさくさくしゅう}. For 一昨々日 and 一昨々年, there are the native readings さきおととい and さきおとし respectively, and they're actually used. So, say you wanted to say Monday three days ago, you would

さきおととい げつようび
need to say 一昨々日の月曜日.

7. 一昨 for "2...ago" is read as いっさく and is rare. This is mainly due to the fact that it is Sino-Japanese. When it is used, it is appended without the particle の to a time phrase. So, you get phrases like 一昨^{みっか}3日 meaning "the third, which was two days ago".

8. If you want to realistically go past two units of time either direction (past or future), it is more practical to say something like 5年前 (five years ago) or 3日前^{みっかまえ} (three days ago). Of course, sometimes one of these cooler phrases like さきおととい (= 3日前). Nevertheless, # + Time Phrase + 前^こ(before)/後 (after) is more frequently used once you leave the sphere of the common words like きのう, きょう, あした, etc.

Examples

1. 昨夜、10時^{じ ね}に寝た。(More common)
I went to sleep at 10 last night.

2. アニメクラブは7時から^{れいじ}零時までです。
Anime club is from 7 to midnight.

3. きのう仕事を休みました。
I took a break from work yesterday.

漢字 Note: Words like きょう and きのう are frequently written in ひらがな.

4. 彼女は一昨年^う生まれました。
She was born the year before last.

5. 翌日^{じゅぎょう}の授業^{よしゅう}の予習をする。
To prepare for the next day's lessons.

Classroom Note: You should always 予習 before your Japanese class to get more out of what your teacher says.

6. 今朝はたいそう寒かったですね。
This morning was quite cold, wasn't it?

7. この前の火曜日におもしろい映画^{えいが}を見ましたよ。

normal

I saw an interesting movie last Tuesday!

8. 明日の朝8時に^お起こしてください。

Please wake me up at 8 o'clock tomorrow morning.

9. その人は^{しゅんじ}瞬時に（して）^{さる}猿になった。

That person became a monkey in an instant.

10. 「今年の冬は^{ことし ふゆ さむ}寒くなるでしょうか」 「^{てんきよほう}天気予報を見ていないので寒いかどうか分かりません」

"Will this winter be cold?" "I don't know whether or not it's going to be cold in the weather forecast."

Times

Times (Frequency): The Counters ～度 VS ～回

Many Japanese speakers will say that ^{いちど}一度 and ^{いっかい}一回 are the same, but they actually differentiate them. First, consider the following sentence where they are completely interchangeable.

11. 私はあの本を {2度・2回} 読んだ。

I read that book twice.

12. {2度・2回} ^{ふわた}目の不渡り
Second bouncing/non-payment

Despite the fact that they both count the number of times an action occurs, there are instances where you choose them liberally. One restriction is that ～度 can't be used with ^{だい}第～ or ^{ぜん}全～. ～度 is also not used with decimals.

13. 6回^{れんぞく}連続で^{さんか}参加している。(6回 → 6度 X)
I've been participated six times consecutively.

14. 今年は^{まつ}祭りが2度ある。(2度 → 2回?)
This year, the festival will come twice.

15. 第4回^{かんけいかくりようきょうぎ}の関係閣僚協議 (第4度 X)

The fourth relations cabinet conference

normal

16. 平均週3.7回

An average of 3.7 times a week

17. 全^{ぜん}20回のセミナー

All 20 seminars

18. 2度^{たいけん}の体験をよい経験^いとして生かす。(2回?)

To use the second experience as a good lesson.

When the number is more than 10, some of these restrictions go away. It's also interesting to note that ～度目 is used twice as much as ～回目. Remember that example with 6回連続? Something like 5年連続100度目 would be completely fine. For instances where they are interchangeable, 回 is more common. However, 度 is particularly common with the number 2. Also, as the number gets larger, 回 is less frequent. So, if a headline were to have "third non-payment" in it, odds are that it would have 3回. If a company somehow did this for the 15th time, we would expect to see 度.

When counting the frequency/repetition of an action in a particular time frame, use ～回. This is in terms of years, days, etc. and doesn't take on details such as minutes, etc. In such case, you'd expect 度. Something like 月に三度 is possible, but this doesn't show frequency.

19. 毎年、この村では祭りを3回行います。

We have festivals three times annually in this village.

～度 would count repetition that is uncertain and or irregular. Other expressions that deal with series or segmenting statistically prefer ～回. One last thing to consider is that ～度 is often used in regards to things that are hard to predict and ～回 is preferred overwhelmingly when the number of times of something can be known beforehand.

20. 10度目^{ゆうしょう め ざ}の優勝を目指す。

To aim for the tenth victory.

21. 3年連続^{れんぞく め ゆうしょう}3度目の優勝

The third consecutive victory in three years

Frequency Note: Remember that ～度目 is generally twice as common as ～回.

22. 4度目^{ふっかつ}の復活は難しい。

A fourth restoration is difficult.

normal

23. 3回めのセミナー

The third seminar

24. 6回目の核実験

The sixth nuclear tests after restart

第56課: Absolute Time I: Basic Phrases

Absolute time expressions indicate a relatively exact time frame and are often sensitive to tense. They are generally adverbial nouns. This means that they usually can either function as nouns or adverbs depending on context. So, pay attention to how this affects particle usage.

Absolute Time

The following table shows many single word absolute time phrases in Japanese. Patterns to be discussed in this lesson help fill in the gaps. Take note of patterns. There are word notes after the chart. So, be sure to not overlook them.

Chart Note: Variants are listed from most to least polite. ▽ stands for rare.

時間帯	2...ago	Last...	This...	Next...	2...from now
Day	一昨日 いっさくじつ おととい	昨日 さくじつ きのう	本日、今日 ほんじつ、 こんじつ ▽ こんにちきょう	明日 みょうにち あす あした	明後日 みょうごにち あさって
Morning		昨朝 さくちょう	今朝 こんちょう う▽ けさ	明朝 みょうちょう	
Evening	一昨晚 いっさくばん	昨晚・タベ さくばん・ゆうべ	今晚 こんばん	明晩 みょうばん	

Night	一昨夜 いっさくや	昨夜 さくや	今夜 こんや	明夜 みょうや	
Week	先々週 せんせん しゅう	昨週、先週 さくしゅう ▽、せ んしゅう	今週 こんしゅ う	来週 らいしゅ う	再来週 さらしゅう
Month	先々月 せんせんげ つ	先月 せんげつ	今月 こんげつ	来月 らいげつ	再来月 さらげつ
Year	一昨年 いっさくね ん おとし	昨年、去年 さくねん、きよね ん	今年 ことし	来年 らいねん	明後年、再来年 みょうごねん、さら いねん

Word Notes:

1. 先日 ^{せんじつ} means "the other day". 本月 ^{ほんげつ} (this month) and 本年 ^{ほんねん} (this year) exist, but they are very formal and typically in written addresses. However, note that although 本朝 ^{ほんちょう} exists, it means "our nation" instead of "this morning".

2. Changing 一昨 ^{いっさく} to 一昨々 ^{いっさくさく} creates "3...ago". However, the Chinese readings are not used in the spoken language and should be reserved for the written language. For the native words おととい and おとし, you can さき to get さきおととい (three days ago) and さきおとし (three years ago) respectively. It is these native readings that should be used in actual practice.

3. "3 days from now" can be 明々後日 ^(しあさって・みょうごにち) or 明日の翌々日 ^{あした よくよくじつ}.

4. 今年 may be read as こんねん in certain contexts such as in the phrase 今年度 (this fiscal year).

5. It's funny to note that 明々後日 exists too, and its native counterpart is やのあさって. These words are not really used that often because 4日後 is much easier.

6. 昨 can sometimes be very formal. For instance, 去年 will be used most of the time when speaking. The words 昨春, 昨夏, 昨秋, and 昨冬 are all 書き言葉.

Making other Absolute Time Expressions

The following expressions are very important when you can't use a specific, one word time expression like the ones above. Some of these expressions are not really used and some may be more formal than others. All of these details are discussed in the word notes following the chart.

3...ago	一昨々+Time Word	2...ago	一昨	Last...	この前の
This/next...	今度の	Today's...	今日の	Next...	この次の
1 after next	翌々 (の)	Day	日	Morning	朝, 午前
Evening	夕方, タベ, 夕暮れ, 晩, 夕	Night	夜, 夜間	Week	週(間)
Month	月, 月間	Year	年, 年(間)		

Word Notes:

1. 夜間, 週間, 月間, and 年間 are all formal and more likely to be used in the written language. 週間 and 年間 are common in the spoken language, but they are still more formal.
2. タベ most frequently means "last night" where it is more common than 昨夜.
3. 夕 is essentially the same as 夕方, but it's often used in set phrases. 夕暮れ is very commonly used, and as the character 暮 suggests, it especially refers to the time when the sun is actually going down. Lastly, 晩 is the closest equivalent to the generic English word "evening" and is a commonly used word.
4. You may use 翌^{よく} for "next" for expressions that use 来^{らい}. Frequency of use depends on the expression. The difference between 翌週 and 来週 would be the same as the difference between "the next week" and "next week" in English. This is the same for the other expressions.
5. 翌々 is usually used without a の. You can use it with days, months, and years. Something like 翌々2016年 would equate to "2016, the year two years from now". The word is not quite that common, and you are more likely to see it in writing.
6. 一昨々 has the reading いっさくさく. It is not used in the spoken language, and neither are other Sino-Japanese phrases made with it such as 一昨々日^{いっさくさくじつ} and 一昨々週^{いっさくさくしゅう}. For 一昨々日 and 一昨々年, there are the native readings さきおととい and さきおとし respectively, and they're actually used. So, say you wanted to say Monday three days ago, you would need to say 一昨々日^{さきおととい}の月曜日^{げつようび}.

一昨 for "2...ago" is read as いっさく and is rare. This is mainly due to the fact that it is

normal

Sino-Japanese. When it is used, it is appended without the particle の to a time phrase. So, you get phrases like 一昨^{みっか}3日 meaning "the third, which was two days ago".

8. If you want to realistically go past two units of time either direction (past or future), it is more practical to say something like 5年前 (five years ago) or 3日^{みっかまえ}前 (three days ago). Of course, sometimes one of these cooler phrases like さきおととい (= 3日前). Nevertheless, # + Time Phrase + 前^こ(before)/後 (after) is more frequently used once you leave the sphere of the common words like きのう, きょう, あした, etc.

Examples

1. 昨夜、10時^じに寝^ねた。(More common)
I went to sleep at 10 last night.

2. アニメクラブは7時^{れいじ}から零^{みっかまえ}時までです。
Anime club is from 7 to midnight.

3. き^このう仕事を休みました。
I took a break from work yesterday.

漢字 Note: Words like きょう and きのう are frequently written in ひらがな.

4. 彼女は一昨^う年生まれました。
She was born the year before last.

5. 翌^{じゅぎょう}日の授^{よしゅう}業の予習をする。
To prepare for the next day's lessons.

Classroom Note: You should always 予習 before your Japanese class to get more out of what your teacher says.

6. 今朝はたいそう寒かったですね。
This morning was quite cold, wasn't it?

7. この前の火曜日におもしろい映画^{えいが}を見ましたよ。
I saw an interesting movie last Tuesday!

8. 明日^あの朝8時に起こしてください。

normal

Please wake me up at 8 o'clock tomorrow morning.

9. その人は瞬時に（して）猿になった。

That person became a monkey in an instant.

10. 「今年の冬は寒くなるでしょうか」 「天気予報を見ていないので寒いかどうか分かりません」

"Will this winter be cold?" "I don't know whether or not it's going to be cold in the weather forecast."

Times

Times (Frequency): The Counters ～度 VS ～回

Many Japanese speakers will say that 一度 and 一回 are the same, but they actually differentiate them. First, consider the following sentence where they are completely interchangeable.

11. 私はあの本を {2度・2回} 読んだ。

I read that book twice.

12. {2度・2回} 目の不渡り

Second bouncing/non-payment

Despite the fact that they both count the number of times an action occurs, there are instances where you choose them liberally. One restriction is that ～度 can't be used with 第～ or 全～. ～度 is also not used with decimals.

13. 6回連続で参加している。(6回 → 6度 X)

I've been participated six times consecutively.

14. 今年は祭りが2度ある。(2度 → 2回?)

This year, the festival will come twice.

15. 第4回の関係閣僚協議(第4度 X)

The fourth relations cabinet conference

16. 平均週3.7回

An average of 3.7 times a week

normal

17. 全^{ぜん}20回のセミナー
All 20 seminars

18. 2度の^{たいけん}体験をよい^い経験として生かす。(2回?)
To use the second experience as a good lesson.

When the number is more than 10, some of these restrictions go away. It's also interesting to note that ～度目 is used twice as much as ～回目. Remember that example with 6回連続? Something like 5年連続100度目 would be completely fine. For instances where they are interchangeable, 回 is more common. However, 度 is particularly common with the number 2. Also, as the number gets larger, 回 is less frequent. So, if a headline were to have "third non-payment" in it, odds are that it would have 3回. If a company somehow did this for the 15th time, we would expect to see 度.

When counting the frequency/repetition of an action in a particular time frame, use ～回. This is in terms of years, days, etc. and doesn't take on details such as minutes, etc. In such case, you'd expect 度. Something like 月に三度 is possible, but this doesn't show frequency.

19. 毎年、この村では祭りを3回行います。
We have festivals three times annually in this village.

～度 would count repetition that is uncertain and or irregular. Other expressions that deal with series or segmenting statistically prefer ～回. One last thing to consider is that ～度 is often used in regards to things that are hard to predict and ～回 is preferred overwhelmingly when the number of times of something can be known beforehand.

20. 10度目の^{ゆうしょう}優勝^{めざ}を目指す。
To aim for the tenth victory.

21. 3年連続3度目の^{れんぞく}優勝^め^{ゆうしょう}
The third consecutive victory in three years

Frequency Note: Remember that ～度目 is generally twice as common as ～回.

22. 4度目の^{ふっかつ}復活は難しい。
A fourth restoration is difficult.

23. 3回めのセミナー

normal The third seminar

かくじっけん
24. 6回目の核実験

The sixth nuclear tests after restart

第58課: The Particle のに

This particle is very similar in grammar to ので. However, it serves a different function.

のに

～のに shows that the latter statement differs from the former, "although". Again, the second clause has to be contrary to what is expected from the first clause. If not, ～が or ～ても should be used. It is not uncommon to see it used as a final particle.

Nouns	犬なのに	Must use copula
Adjectives	新しいのに	Must not use copula
Adjectival Nouns	簡単なのに	Must use copula
Verbs	食べるのに	Must not use copula

Grammar Note: ～だのに is used by some speakers and is viewed as being rather dialectical.

1. あら、2杯も食べたのに、またお代わり？ (Feminine)
My goodness, you've already had two helpings, but you want another one?
2. 急いでいるのに、バスが来なくて、困りました。
Although I was in a hurry, the bus didn't come, so I was troubled.
3. 彼はとても年を取っているのに元気ですよ。
Although he's very old, he's healthy!
4. あれだけがんばって教えたのに私の生徒たちはみなこの前の試験に合格しませんでした。
Despite after all I did, all my students didn't pass the last exam.
5. (周囲の) 反対をおして怪我をしているのに、戦い続けた。
Despite voices of opposition around me and my injuries, I continued to fight.
6. その服、すごくぼろぼろなのに、まだ着てるんだね。
Although those clothes are really worn-out, you're still wearing them, aren't you.

7. 姉は75歳になるのに、まだフランス語の家庭教師をやっている。

Although my older sister is turning 75, she still gives French tutorials (to students).

Spelling Note: せっかく can be written as 折角.

8. 食べないの? せっかく作ったのに。

You're not going to eat it? Even though I went through all the trouble of making it?

9. 早く雨が上がるといいなあ。○

早く雨が上がるといいのに。△

It would be good for the rain to let up quickly...

～たらいいのに

～たらいいのに shows regret. It is often used with the potential. It can also be used in proposal of ideas. It is normally translated as "if only".

10. 彼ともう一度会えたらいいのに。

I wish I was able to meet with him one more time.

11. (お) 金持ちだったらいいのになあ。

It would be nice if I were rich.

12. 空を飛べたらいいなあ。

Wouldn't it be nice if I could fly...

～ばいいのに

～ばいいのに・ばいいのだが・ば{なあ・ねえ} are like "although it would be good if you". This suggests that the person is doing the contrary. "You" doesn't have to be the only subject. It could be an "it".

13. そんなに日本語を勉強したいなら、日本へ行けばいいのに。

If you really want to study Japanese so badly, then it'd be good for you to just go to Japan.

14. 雨がやめばいいのだが。

Although it would be nice for the rain to end...

15. 彼はもう少しゴルフがうまければなあ。

If only he could be a little better at golf.

16. 「このごろ太^{ふと}っちゃって…」 「もっと運動^{うんどう}（を）すればいいのに。テニスとかバスケットか（して）はどう？」

"I've been getting fat recently" "It would be nice if you exercised more. How about doing tennis, basketball, or something?"

17. 「漢字が覚えられないんです」 「辞書^{じしょ}を引けばいいのに」
"I can't remember Kanji" "It would be nice if you used a dictionary".

18. 「漢字が覚えられないんです」 「毎日読めばいいのに」
"I can't remember Kanji" "It would be nice if you read".

19. 前向き^{まえむ}に考えればいいのに。
It would be nice if you thought positively.

20. 「試験^{しけん}の点^{てん}が悪くて…」 「もっと勉強すればいいのに」
"I did bad on my exam" "It would be nice if you studied more".

Nuance Note: ～ばいいのに is a little cold. Try using nicer patterns to suggest things like ～たらどうですか and ～たらいいと思います. You can also add context to make the suggestion more 柔らかい "soft".

21. 「お金がなくて、困^{こま}ってるんだ」 「仕事を探せばいいのに。最低賃金^{いちもん}でも一文なしより（かは）いいだろう」
"I'm troubled because I don't have any money" "It would be nice if you got a job. Minimum wage is better than being penniless".

22. 一日40時間あればいいのに。
I wish there was 40 hours in a day.

23. 雨が激^{はげ}しく降ればよかったのに。
I wish it would have poured.

第59課: Criticizing: くせに・くせして

Everyone has bad habits, tendencies, or mannerisms. On top of that, everyone in the world loves to complain and ridicule the bad qualities of others—sometimes themselves as well. In Japanese, one of the most effective ways of ridiculing others for something is done so by using the word 癖, which literally means “habit” in the negative sense.

In this lesson, we will learn how this word is used in the grammar expression くせに, which

normal

is seen in cruder contexts as くせして, to mean “even though/in spite of” when used to express annoyance, criticism, anger, etc.

Dissatisfaction

As mentioned in the introduction, 癖's basic meaning is to describe habits, mainly bad ones although not limited to them. For instance, “biting one's nails” would be つめをかくくせ and “waking up early” can be expressed with はやおくせの癖.

1. わるい癖をくせ直すには、なおどうしたらいいでしょうか。

What should I do to fix a bad habit?

2. この味、あじ癖くせになりますね！

I'm going to get hooked to this taste!

In Ex. 2, you can see how X {が・は} くせ癖になる is used to mean “to get hooked to X.” Interestingly, 癖 may also refer to kinks and curls in things like hair, rugs, etc. For instance, “to straighten out one's hair” can be expressed with かみ髪^{くせ}の癖を^{なお}直す and the word 癖毛^{くせげ} means “frizzy/unruly hair.”

The pattern 癖に, usually written out as くせに, attaches to nouns, adjectives, adjectival nouns, and verbs as demonstrated in the chart below. Its meaning, as mentioned in the introduction, is “even though/in spite of” and is used when describing annoyance, criticism, anger, a complaint, etc. It is semantically synonymous with the particle のに with the only true difference being the extremely negative connotations implied by くせに.

Nouns	Noun + の・である + <small>くせ</small> に	<small>おとこ</small> 男 {の・である} <small>くせ</small> に Even though you're a man...
Adjectives	Adj. + <small>くせ</small> に	<small>ふる</small> 古い ^{<small>くせ</small>} に Even though it's old...
Adjectival Nouns	Adj. Noun + な + <small>くせ</small> に	<small>かんたん</small> 簡単 ^{<small>くせ</small>} に Even though it's easy...
Verbs	Verb + <small>くせ</small> に	<small>か</small> 買う ^{<small>くせ</small>} に In spite of buying...

Grammar Note: Noun + である^{くせ}に is not used in the spoken language and is seen in somewhat old-fashioned speech.

normal

Below are example sentences of くせに following the various parts of speech as shown in the table above to show an array of negative critical connotations.

かのじょ おとな ははおや せんたく
3. 彼女って大人のくせに、まだ母親に洗濯してもらってるそうだ。
I hear that she still has her mom do her laundry even though she's an adult.

けんたくん こども ぜんぜんそと あそ
4. 健太君は子供のくせに、全然外で遊びたがらないの。
Kenta doesn't want to play outside all even though he's a kid.

たなか にほんじん にほんご はな す
5. 田中さんは、日本人のくせに、日本語を話すのが好きじゃないみたいです。
Mr. Tanaka, despite being Japanese, doesn't appear to like speaking Japanese, huh.

ひと しんそつしゃ なん し しゃべ
6. あの、新卒者のくせに、よく何でも知ってるように喋ったりしますね。
Despite being a new graduate, that person sure often talks like he knows everything, huh.

かのじょ ぜんぜんおもしろ
7. 彼女、コメディアンのくせに、全然面白くないよ。
She isn't funny at all despite being a comedian.

おとこ おんな い かた う い
8. 「男のくせに」や、「女のくせに」などといった言い方はセクハラになり得ると言えよう。
One could say that expressions like “even though you're a man” or “even though you're a woman” can be treated as forms of sexual harassment.

やせいどうぶつ うご にぶ
9. 野生動物のくせに動きが鈍いな。
It's slow moving despite being a wild animal, huh.

かいすい
10. ワニのくせに海水もへっちゃらなんだあ。
Huh, sea water isn't even a big deal even though it's an alligator.

Spelling Note: ワニ can seldom be seen spelled as 鰐.

ちゅうごくじん ばくか
11. 中国人のくせに爆買いしないなんておかしい！
It's so strange that he/she won't spend like crazy despite being Chinese!

いはら あたま わる にんき うらや
12. 猪原は頭が悪いくせに、人気があつて羨ましい！
I'm so jealous that Ihara is popular even though he's dumb!

ほんとう げんき なま
13. 本当は元氣なくせに怠けやがって！
How dare you slack off when you're actually fine!

じぶん ば か ひと ば か ひと だいきら
14. 自分が馬鹿なくせに人を馬鹿にする人が大嫌い。
I hate people who make others out to be idiots even though they themselves are idiots.

かしこ かんが
15. 賢いくせに、おかしなことを考えるんだね。
You sure think a lot of crazy stuff for someone who's wise.

がくれき たか おとこ きら
16. 学歴がないくせにプライドだけ高い男、めっちゃ嫌いなもの！
I really hate men who only have pride with no education!

せんそう けいけん せんそう あこが も
17. あんた、戦争の経験もないくせに戦争に憧れを持つんじゃないぞ。
You don't yearn for war when you've never experienced war!

かれし し おし
18. あたしの彼氏ね、知ってるくせに教えてくれないわ。
My boyfriend, you know, knows but he won't tell/teach me.

し
19. やったくせに知らんぷりするんじゃないぞ！
Don't act like you don't know when you're the one who did it!

け が
20. それだけの怪我したくせに？
Even though that's all you're hurt?

さんかい は しっぱい いまさらなに は
21. 3回も恥ずかしい失敗をしちゃったくせに、今更何が恥ずかしいの？
What are you so embarrassed about now? You've already failed three times...

なん じぶん
22. 何だ、自分がミスしたくせに・・・
What? Even though you yourself have messed up...

くせして

In far critical, often derogatory contexts, くせに can be seen as くせして. This implies slightly older grammar in which に and して share some degree of interchangeability with the latter being more emphatic, thus this form of the expression.

おれ にほんじん ぶっきょう もんがいかん
23. 俺って、日本人のくせして仏教についてはとんと門外漢だよ。
Even though I'm Japanese, I'm a complete outsider about Buddhism.

きこくしじょ くせ し
24. 帰国子女の癖してそんなのも知らないってわけか。
So you don't even know stuff like that despite being a kikoku shijo, huh?

Word Note: 帰国子女 refers to children of Japanese expatriates who then return to Japan.

にほんじん
25. 日本人のくせして、日本語の文法がからっきしダメだ。
Even though I'm Japanese, my Japanese grammar is absolutely hopeless.

第60課: Adnominal Adjectives: /i/ vs /na/

What is an adnominal adjective? The word "adnominal" simply means **something that modifies a noun**. In which case, all adjectives are adnominal. However, *adnominal adjectives* in the realm of Japanese grammar refer to **adjectival phrases that don't conjugate and solely modify the noun they attach to** and are not interpreted as predicates modifying a noun (participle).

Adnominal adjectives (*Rentaishi* 連体詞) are easily distinguished from normal adjectives by the fact that they are all variants of normal adjectives. Appearance-wise, adnominal adjectives all end in /na/ whereas their normal variants all end in /i/. For instance, let's look at *chiisai* 小さい and *chiisana* 小さな, which both translate as "small" but behave differently syntactically following the basic principle mentioned above.

やま ちい とり かんしょう
i. 山の小さい鳥たちを観賞しています。
Yama no chiisai toritachi wo kanshō shite imasu.
I'm admiring the small birds of the mountain.

やま ちい まち す
ii. あの山の小さな町に住んでいます。
Ano yama no chiisana machi ni sunde imasu.
I live in the small town on that mountain.

にほんじん ほんとう たいかく ちい じんしゅ
iii. 日本人は本当に体格 {が・の} 小さい人種なんですか。
Nihonjin wa hontō ni taikaku [ga/no] chiisai jinshu na n desu ka?
Are Japanese really a race whose build is small?

Particle Note: Either *ga* が or *no* の can be used to mark what would be the subject if the dependent clause were being used as an independent clause.

Of the two forms, only *chiisai* 小さい can be seen at the end of a sentence, which is why you can view it as the "predicate form". Naturally, predicates tend to be full phrases, and these full phrases can then in turn be embedded into a noun phrase as one big modifier, which we call a participle.

As is the case with English, though, noun phrases can be modified by more than one phrase simultaneously. This would seem to be the case in i., but in this example it would be incorrect to view 小さい acting as a predicate embedded into a noun phrase. It is simply

normal } used to mean "small bird". This prevents the speaker from interpreting 山の小さい鳥た

ち as "birds with small mountains", which would be nonsensical.

What this means is that 小さい and 小さな do coincide a lot. Syntactically, they're identical in i. and ii., with iii. being the example in which 小さい is indeed part of a complex participle embedded into a noun phrase, which is a function that 小さな cannot have. It is this syntactic complexity that tells the reader the phrase 小さい is a part of must be treated as a participle.

Adnominal adjectives in many ways are just like *no*-adjectives or any other modifying phrase that utilizes the particle *no* の. The only difference is that adnominal adjectives must be directly attached to the noun they modify whereas phrases with *no* の like *yama no* 山の in i. can float, meaning they are not bound directly before the noun they modify.

Although adnominal phrases do not inherently have the syntactic role of behaving as predicates, there are rare instances of this being broken when the otherwise participle is only composed of the adjective itself due to adnominal adjectives being more common before nouns than their non-adnominal forms.

iv. {^{ちい}小さい・^{ちい}小さな (△) } ^{とき}時から^{だいす}大好きでした。

[*Chiisai/chiisana*] *toki kara daisuki deshita.*

I loved it since I was little.

As to be expected, *chiisai toki* 小さい時 is the default choice to express this. However, it just so happens that *chiisana* 小さな is statistically used more in front of nouns. This is due to the fact that the two forms create a predicate/non-predicate relationship in which the former is typically seen at the end of sentences whereas the latter is typically seen after nouns. Grammatically, however, the former is most correct.

Terminology Note: Adnominal adjectives are called *rentaishi* 連体詞 in Japanese.

/i/ & /na/ Pairs

The syntactic difference outlined above is able to explain the differences between adnominal adjectives and non-adnominal adjectives from a distribution standpoint. What it fails to explain, however, is when their distributions overlap, which is the case when neither are viewed as participles when directly modifying a noun. In this grammatical scenario, we must look how they're pragmatically interpreted. Meaning, the forms produce slightly different nuances.

Before getting into further detail, in the chart below you will find a list of all the essential adnominal adjectives (to the right) along with their non-adnominal variants to the left. The first four examples, however, are examples of normal adjectival nouns who share the same

normal

tion between /i/ and /na/ based on the same nuancing principles that are to be

explained next that are included in the chart to be as thorough as possible.

Meaning	Ending in /i/	Ending in /na/
Warm	暖かい <i>Atatakai</i>	暖か {な・だ} <i>Atataka [na/da]</i>
Square	四角い <i>Shikakui</i>	四角 {な・だ} <i>Shikaku [na/da]</i>
Soft	柔らかい <i>Yawarakai</i>	柔らか {な・だ} <i>Yawaraka [na/da]</i>
Fine/minute	細かい <i>Komakai</i>	細か {な・だ} <i>Komaka [na/da]</i>
Small	小さい <i>Chiisai</i>	小さな <i>Chiisana</i>
Large	大きい <i>Ōkii</i>	大きな <i>Ōkina</i>
Strange	可笑しい <i>Okashii</i>	可笑しな <i>Okashina</i>
New	新しい <i>Atarashii</i>	新たな <i>Aratana</i>

All of the /na/ forms in the right column are examples of adnominal adjectives. Even if any of these words do have other conjugations, those conjugations would be incredibly limited in scope and would need to be studied separately.

1. か^{ほそ}細い^{こえ}声はだんだん^{おお}大きくなっている。(Use of 大きい)
Kabosoi koe wa dandan ōkiku natte iru.
 The fragile voice is becoming gradually larger.

2. 驚^{おどろ}くほど^{ちい}小さな^{すあし}素足^{あらわ}が露になった。(Use of 小さな)
Odoroku hodo chiisana suashi ga arawa ni natta.
 Surprisingly small bare feet became exposed.

Grammar Note: This is an example of 小さな being used as a predicate; however, it is still juxtaposed right before the noun it modifies. Only the degree of the sense of "small" is being modified, and that is via the adverbial phrase 驚くほど. Otherwise, adnominal adjectives do not have the same free range as other adjectives to be used in complex predicate phrases that modify nouns.

3. 小^{ちい}さな^{こえ}声^{はな}で話しかける。(Use of 小さな)

normal

Chiisana koe de hanashikakeru.
To talk to someone in a small voice.

4. ^{やわ}柔らかかった。^{あたた}暖かった。(Use of 柔らかい & 暖かい)
Yawarakakatta. Atatakakatta.
It was soft. It was warm.

5. ^{かわ}皮を^む剥いて^{こま}細かく^き切りました。(Use of 細かい)
Kawa wo muite komakaku kirimashita.
I peeled the skin and finely cut it up.

6. ^{おお}大きい^{きぼう}希望の^{くも}雲が^わ湧いている。(Use of 大きい)
Ōkii kibō no kumo ga waite iru.
Large clouds of hope are gushing forth.

7. ^{おお}大きな^{きぼう}希望の^{くも}雲が^わ湧いている。(Use of 大きな)
Ōkina kibō no kumo ga waite iru.
Clouds of great hope are gushing forth.

Nuance Restrictions

When /i/ and /na/ pairs exist, the ones that end in /i/ are naturally objective, typically used with concrete nouns, but are not limited to literal interpretations, and the ones that end in /na/ are naturally subjective, typically used with abstract nouns, and almost always limited to literal yet emotional interpretations.

However, this is not all you have to consider. Some forms do have nuances the others don't. You also can't just choose which form you want in a set phrase. After all, set phrases are set for a reason. With that being said, we will now focus on what exactly these nuance restrictions are.

Chiisai/Chiisana 小さい・小さな *Ōkii/Ōkina* 大きい・大きな

Generally speaking, *chiisana* 小さな and *ōkina* 大きな are only used to indicate physical size but with a subjective twist. Only *chiisai* 小さい and *ōkii* 大きい may be used to indicate small/large monetary values, and they may even be used to mean “old” and “young” in the context of age among siblings.

8. ^{よんひゃくえん}400円ですか。すみません、^{おお}{大きい○・^{おお}大きな X} のしかないんです。
Yonhyakuen desu ka? Sumimasen, [ōkii ○/ōkina X] no shika nai n desu.
It's 400 yen? I'm sorry, but I only have large ones (bills).

9. 世界一小さい紙幣は何ですか。
Sekai'ichi chiisai shihei wa nan desu ka?
What is the world's smallest paper bill?

10. 大きくなったね。
Ōkiku natta ne.
My, you've grown.

11. 小さい頃からずっとそう思っていました。
Chiisai kara koro zutto sō omotte imashita.
I've always thought so since I was little.

12. 中央に小さなテーブルがありました。
Chūō ni chiisana tēburu ga arimashita.
There was a small table in the center.

13. 世界で一番大きい建物は何ですか。
Sekai de ichiban ōkii tatemono wa nan desu ka?
What is the largest building in the world?

14. 大きな政府を求める人たちが必ずどこの国にもいる。
Ōkina seifu wo motomeru hitotachi ga kanarazu doko no kuni ni mo iru.
There are always people who seek big government in any country.

Okashii おかしい vs Okashina おかしな

Okashii おかしい is generally used in positive connotations in the sense of “funny” whereas *okashina* おかしな is generally used in negative connotations in the sense of “weird/suspicious/odd.” This, of course, is only a rule of thumb, but it generally holds true. However, it is important to note that this distinction really has nothing to do with being objective or subjective or being concrete or abstract.

15. おかしな顔をする。
Okashina kao wo suru.
To make a strange/suspicious face.

16. おかしい顔をする。
Okashii kao wo suru.
To make a strange/funny face.

normal おかしい話ですね。

Okashii hanashi desu ne.
What a strange thing to say.

18. おかしな行動を取る。
Okashina kōdō wo toru.
To take strange/suspicious action(s).

Atarashii 新しい vs Aratana 新たな

Although *aratana* 新たな was grouped as an adnominal adjective above, the adverbial form *aratani* 新たに does exist, and it is actually quite common. The difference between *atarashii* 新しい and *aratana* 新たな is that the former is more suitable for objective/concrete contexts whereas is most suitable for (potentially) subjective/obscure. The latter form also happens to be primarily used in writing and has what can be best described as a 'cool' nuance.

That isn't to say *aratana* 新たな and *aratani* 新たに are never used in the spoken language. To the contrary, because they are 'cool' sounding with great emotional undertones, they are used extensively in advertisement and the like.

19. 新しい家具を買いました。
Atarashii kagu wo kaimashita.
I bought new furniture.
20. 新たな冒険が始まる！
Aratana bōken ga hajimaru!
A new adventure will become!
21. 新しい考えに取って代わる。
Atarashii kangae ni tottekawaru.
To replace with a new idea.
22. 決意を新たにしました。
Ketsui wo aratani shimashita.
I've renewed my resolution.

Yawarakai 柔らかい vs Yawarakana 柔らかな

Yawarakana 柔らかな is only capable of referring to literal softness of the five senses. However, *yawarakai* 柔らかい may be used more broadly despite being less subjective. For

instance, when used in the phrase *yawarakai hon* 柔らかい本, it can refer to erotica. However, other phrases are more common for this.

As you may have already noticed, whenever forms are not interchangeable, it is the set phrases and obscure instances that only seem to matter. Of course, everything distinguishing /i/ and /na/ forms still apply.

23. {^{やわ}柔らかい・^{やわ}柔らかな} ^{かんしよく}感触に^め目を見^み開く。
[Yawarakai/yawarakana] kanshoku ni me wo mihiraku.
To open one's eyes to a tender sensation.

24. ^{やわ}柔らかな^ひ日^ざ差しを^{かん}感じる。
Yawarakana hizashi wo kanjiru.
To feel gentle sunlight.

25. ^{やわ}柔らかな^{ものごし}物腰で^{せつ}接する。
Yawarakana monogoshi de sessuru.
To look after/deal with a gentle demeanor.

26. ^{やわ}柔らかい (お) ^{もち}餅を^{つく}作った。
Yawarakai (o)mochi wo tsukutta.
I made soft rice cake.

27. ^{やわ}柔らかな (お) ^{もち}餅を^た食べませんか。
Yawarakana (o)mochi wo tabemasen ka?
Why not have some soft rice cake?

第61課: Before

Expressing "before" in Japanese is not as difficult as other similar temporal phrases, but it still come with its own set of challenges.

Before: 前

When used as a temporal word, 前 means "before". It can be used with verbs in the non-past tense or with other nouns. Because 前 is also noun, you need to use the particle の when it is after another noun phrase.

1. それはどのくらい前のことでしたか。
How long ago was that?

2. 私は旅行に行く前に、トラベラーズ・チェックを買いました。
I bought traveler's checks before I went on my trip.

重言 Note: Some speakers use 旅行に行く, but this is traditionally incorrect. It is more correctly 旅行（を）する. This is because 旅行 literally means "going on a trip".

4. 海外旅行の前に、パスポートを取りました。
I got a passport before going abroad.

5. 食べる前に、手を洗います。
I wash my hands before I eat.

6. 僕が帰る前に、ホストファミリーのお母さんは料理をしました。
Before I got home, my host family mother had cooked.

7. これは11年前の新聞だ。
This is a newspaper from 11 years ago.

8. 日本に行く前に、ちょっと日本語を勉強しました。
I studied some Japanese before going to Japan.

9. 彼は3年前に死んだ。
He died three years ago.

10. 彼は3年前に死んでいた。 (今になってわかったこと)
He's been dead for three years.

11. 彼は3年前に死んでいる。
It's been three years since he died.

Word Note: 亡くなる is more neutral than 死ぬ for when someone passes away.

前: ぜん

前 also has the reading ぜん. When used as a suffix after Sino-Japanese words, it is a very formal and suitable for 書き言葉. Its usage is almost unheard of the spoken language, but it is part of the official reading of many phrases in the jargon of many fields.

12. 1日3回 食前に服用してください。
Please take (medicine) three times a day before eating.

normal

Word Note: 服用する is more formal than 飲む and is used in settings in which medical terminology is most appropriate.

Reading Note: 一日 is not read as ついたち when 一日 is used to mean "a day".

13. 使用前自主検査^{じしゅけんさ}
Independent/autonomous inspection before use

14. 期日前投票
Early voting

Reading Note: Many people would think きじつぜんとうひょう meant 期日全投票. So, in the spoken language, this word should be read as きじつまえとうひょう.

15. 出生前診断
Prenatal diagnosis

Reading Note: 出生 is usually read as しゅっしょう. However, some organizations use the reading しゅっせい. For instance, in medical terminology 出生届 (birth registration) is read as しゅっせいとどけ despite the fact that most people say しゅっしょうとどけ. In the spoken language, 前 would be read as まえ as expected.

As a prefix, it is used to mean "ex-". However, it comes with the word 元-, which also means "ex-" but implies that other "ex-..." have existed before. This, though, is not sufficient in distinguishing them all the time. Someone who has stepped back from his position would be 前〇〇. Before this person, anyone with the title would be 元〇〇. What if you had a boat and there were no person to carry the legacy after the vessel sunk? You would use 元船長^{せんちょう} instead of 前船長.

16. 現社長が前社長を殺害したという事態が明るみに出た。^{げんしゃちょう さつがい じたい あか}
The state of affairs of the current company president having murdered the ex-company president
has come to light.

17. どうしても元カノを気にしてしまうよ。
My ex-girlfriend always gets to me no matter what.

Contraction Note: カノ is a contraction of 彼女 when used to mean "girlfriend".

Final Note: Aside from this, 前 read as ぜん exists in other time phrases such as 前日^{じつ} (the other day).

normal

直前

Right before can be expressed with the word 直前. The word also has the literal direction meaning of "right in front of". When used in a temporal sense, it is frequently appended to nouns without the need of の. However, the use of の is most certainly appropriate in the spoken language.

18. 帰京する飛行機の直前に到着する時刻のバスにしか間に合わなかったこともあります。(Written)

I've also only managed to make it to a bus with an arrival time (to the airport) right before my flight back (to Tokyo).

Word Note: 帰京する = 東京に帰る.

19. 車の直前に人が突然飛び出してきた。

A person suddenly dashed out right in front of the/my car.

20. 爆発直前にガソリンが気化したような臭いがしていた。

There was a smell of gasoline vaporizing right before the explosion.

漢字 Note: 臭い gives a nuance of stench whereas 匂い is any given smell. The word is also frequently spelled in ひらがな.

第62課: After I

There is not one phrase for "after," and there are minute differences that you need to know about the various ways to say it. So, pay attention as always.

後

"Verb A + た後 (で) + Verb B" states that B happens after A. However, there are several other similar expressions in Japanese. So, pay close attention to the differences discussed later on.

As for this basic pattern, the verb before 後 must be in the past tense. Yet, ～ていた後は ungrammatical because it needs to show the end of an action. Other grammatical issues that the example sentences and subsequent explanation will show is that whether to use で, に, or no particle is somewhat difficult. However, it's important to see examples first.

ざっし
雑誌を読んでいた後で、アニメを見た。 X

1b. 雑誌を読んだ後で、アニメを見た。○

I watched anime after reading a magazine.

2a. 百貨店^{ひゃっかてん}があった後で、駅^{えき}ができた。X

2b. 百貨店 {があった・の} 後に、駅ができた。○

A train station was built where a department store had been.

3. 昨日は授業^{じゅぎょう}の後、家^{あと}に帰らないで映画^{うち}を観^{えい}に行^がった。○

Yesterday I went to go see a movie instead of going home after class.

漢字 Note: 観 *can* be used instead of 見 when one is watching a program of some sort such as a movie, a TV show, play, drama, Family Guy (I love this show), etc.

4. 学校のあと、ふと目まい^め目まいがした。○

I felt dizzy all of a sudden after school.

Spelling Notes: 後 is occasionally written in ひらがな as the character has several readings and some speakers just like to write it in ひらがな to disambiguate as habit. Lastly, 目まい may seldom fully be written in 漢字 as 眩暈・目眩.

Ex. 2a is ungrammatical because ある is existential, and to clearly show the location in which the train station has now taken the place of the department store, you need to use the particle に. Even so, verbs of condition can be used with 後 as long as the "end" of the state is clearly instantiated correctly.

5. しばらくギリシャにいた後、トルコへ渡^{わた}った。

After being in Greece for a while, I crossed over to Turkey.

6. 大変^{たいへん}だった後は、良い^よことがあるのかな。

I wonder if there can be anything good after things being so terrible.

Many other particles can follow 後. You should not be surprised to a sentence where に, は, や, と, or から follow it. After all, it is a noun. When showing the condition after a change, then 後は is perfect to use. Verb B after 後は should deal with duration or condition.

7. 勉強をしたあとは、疲^{つか}れて何もできない。(X) → (後で)

After studying, I'm tired and can't do anything.

Ex. 7 is not plausible to some speakers as being unable to do anything due to studying isn't a state of change over any serious duration of time. Studying is usually not long in duration

normal

and is realistically a temporary state of action. Now, if you are exaggerating things, then it would be more OK.

8. 県外に引っ越した後は、友人と会う機会が減った。

Since moving out of the prefecture, chances to meet friends have decreased.

Word Note: 友人 is more frequently used in the written language.

9. Kポップを聴いた後は、気持ちがよくなります。

I feel better after having listened to K-pop.

Pronunciation Note: Pronounce K as ケイ.

後は can also be used to show that something is done after another action habitually. It's also very important to have this form when you want to conjoin multiple 後 expressions for topicalization/emphasis.

10. 歯を磨いた後はすぐ寝ます。

I go right to sleep after I brush my teeth.

11. 働いた後や勉強した後はカラオケ！

Karaoke after working and or studying!

後に can be used in a sense of time, and in doing so it is more punctual. But, there are many more examples where it is used in the sense of location as well.

12. 僕は食べた後（に）歯を磨いた。

I brushed my teeth after I ate.

13. 友達が帰った後には、ゴミがたくさん落ちてた。(Casual)

There was a lot of trash dropped after my friends went home.

14. 花が咲いた後に、実ができて、その中に種ができる。

After a flower blooms, a fruit forms, and inside that seeds form.

15. 卒業（を）した後に、仕事を探します。

After graduating, I'll look for a job.

16. 子供が寝た後に、映画を見ました。

I watched a movie after my child went to bed.

normal

17. 昼ご飯の後に、その町を見物しました。
We went sightseeing in the town after lunch.

As 後 is a noun, ～後だ can also be seen at the end of a sentence or clause. So, it could be that で in 後で is the て Form of だ, which will show in context and intonation. You can also see あとのN. As far as 後から is concerned, it uses the physical sense of the word. から means "from". So, imagine that there is something that comes about from the end of an action A.

18. 結果が分かるのは、調査の後だ。
We'll know the results after the investigation.

19. 子供が帰ったあとからはま～るい大きなお月様!
From after the children have gone home, the round, big moon comes out!
From the lyrics of 夕焼け小焼け.

～後に

～後に also means "later". This attaches to Sino-Japanese words involving time. It is sometimes formal such as in Ex. 22 and 23, but there are also instances in which it is quite normal like when it is paired with 週間 as in Ex. 20 and 21.

20. 三時間後に鳩山総理大臣は成田空港に到着します。
Prime Minister Hatoyama will arrive in Narita Airport in 3 hours.

Person Note: Yukio Hatoyama (鳩山由紀夫) was the Prime Minister of Japan from 2009 to 2010.

21. 2週間後に帰ります。
I'll return in two weeks.

22. 食後に薬を飲む。
To take medicine after a meal.

Sentence Note: Ex. 22 would be most expected of a doctor to say or write.

23. 帰宅後にメイクを落とす女性
Women who take off their make-up after arriving home

Word Note: 帰宅後 = 家に帰った後

～のち

後 may also be read as のち. のち may be used in the same sense as 後 and may be used just like ～後に in the sense of ～あとに and ～ごに. However, it is more formal and is most likely to be in the written language. のちに may also be used in the sense of "henceforth".

24. それをずっとのちに知りました。
I knew of that long afterwards.

25. 三ヶ月^{さん か げつ} 後^ご に離脱^{のち りだつ}。
Defecting after three months.

26. 大学を卒業した後^{のち}、演劇界^{えんげきかい}に入った。
After graduating, I entered the world of theatre.

27. 晴れ^はのち曇り^{くも}
Fine, cloudy later

Sentence Note: Ex. 27 is an example of common messages you might find watching a Japanese weather report.


～てから

～てから shows what you do after something else. This goes in hand when showing the starting point of something. In this case, it's the starting point of the new action *after* the previous one. So, once the first action is established, then that sets up the starting point for the next action. This pattern is very good for showing sequence.

28. 夕食^{ゆうしょく}を食べてから寝^ねる前^{まへ}の時間^{じ かん}が長すぎる。
The time before I go to bed after eating dinner is too long.

29. 別^{わか}れてから会っていない。
I haven't met her since we split up.

30. 私は勉強^{べんきょう}を始めてから、多くのことを学びました。
I've learned a lot of things since I started studying.

 たくさん^{こた}考えてから答^{こた}えます。

I will answer after some thought.

32. 日本に来てからもう10年になります。

It has already been ten years since I came to Japan.

33. 日本に来てからずっと日本語の勉強をしています。

I've been studying Japanese ever since I came to Japan.

34. 高校を卒業^{そつぎょう}してから、大学に行かないで仕事をする人も多い。

There are also a lot of people that work instead of going to college after graduating high school.

Phrase Note: 入学^{にゅうがく}する = "to be admitted", which can also be used in reference to middle and high school in Japan. So, using this instead of 大学に行く may not be a smart idea if you don't have the context. Now, 大学に入学する would still mean "to be admitted into college", but it doesn't describe going to four years of college like the above sentence does.

35. 入^{はい}ってから出^{こわ}るまで、怖^{こわ}かった。

I was scared from when I entered until I left.

Particle Note: Other particles like は and の can follow ～てから. You can even see だ after it.

Tense Note: You should not use this pattern with ～ている. So, ～ていてから X.

～後で VS ～てから

There are many instances where using ～後で can be unnatural or even ungrammatical. At other times, they're interchangeable. Consider the following examples.

36. 買い物を {してから・した後で} 映画を見ました。

I watched a movie after shopping.

37. 切符^{きっぷ}を買っ {てから ○・た後に ○・た後で △} ポケットの中に入れた。

After I bought the ticket, I put it inside my pocket.

Grammar Note: 後で is unnatural because Action B happens right after Action A as a consequence of it. The same problem exists for Ex. 38.

normal 5 よっと口をすすい {でから ○・た後に ○・た後で △} 歯を磨く。

To brush one's teeth after rinsing one's mouth a little.

漢字 Note: すすぐ may rarely be written as 漱ぐ in this context.

39. 卒業し {てから ○・た後で X}、彼には会っていない。

I haven't met with him since graduating.

Grammar Note: You should never use ない as the latter condition (state/action B) with 後で. So, in the sense of "since", you should use ～てから rather than ～後で.

40. 秋が来 {てから ○・た後で X}、急きゅうに人通りひととおりが少なくなった。

Street traffic suddenly got deserted since fall came.

第63課: Absolute Time VI: When: 時

時 is a noun literally meaning "time." It is most frequently used after dependent clauses to mean "when" as in "when one does" and not as the question "when". Despite being easy to translate, its usage is actually complex due to tense differences. Pay attention to notes on particles and parts of speech as both issues are extremely relevant to this discussion.

The Complicated Grammar of 時

時 is used to mean "when" when used with time phrases. The tense and part of speech used with 時 is very important as you will see throughout this lesson.

Tense

As mentioned in the introduction, 時 is complicated because of tense. Why? Considering that the following combinations are possible, it's easy for students to get them all confused.

～するとき、～する	～するとき、～した	～したとき、～する	～したとき、～した
-----------	-----------	-----------	-----------

English likes tense to be consistent in a sentence, so the first and last combinations tend to be easier for students to acquire. The middle ones, though, are different to say the least.

1. ご飯を食べるとき、いつも手を洗います。

When(ever)/before I eat a meal, I always wash my hands.

2. ご飯を食べ始めるとき、「いただきます」という。

normal u/we say "Itadakimasu" when(ever)/before we start eating a meal.

3. 日本に帰ったとき、まず(お)寿司を食べました。

I first ate sushi right when/after I returned home to Japan.

4. 昨夜、ご飯を食べるとき、手を洗いませんでした。

Last night, before I ate, I didn't wash my hands.

5. ご飯を食べ終わったとき、いつも「ご馳走さまでした」と言います。

You/we say "Gochisou-sama deshita" after finishing a meal.

It's not that the other combinations can't be translated into English. From these last two examples, it looks as if there is a before-after relation being made in the dependent clause in relation to the main clause. This is often the case, but as you will see, it is not the only possible situation.

Consider the difference between the following two sentences.

6. ベトナムへ行く時に、ベトナム語を少し習いました。 (日本で)

Before going to Vietnam, I studied a little Vietnamese.

7. ベトナムへ行った時に、ベトナム語を少し習いました。 (ベトナムで)

When I went to Vietnam, I studied a little Vietnamese.

The only thing different was the form of 行く before 時. The distinction does not tell whether the sentence is in the past or not because that's already evident. What the tense distinction in the subordinate clause shows is whether the action in that clause has realized or not.

Thus, 時 functions as the base time, and the action in the clause before it may either happen before or after the action of the main clause.

前後関係 and 時

There are instances when ignoring this 前後関係 (before-after relationship) can cause the sentence to be ungrammatical.

8. 朝起きるときに、口をすすぐ。X

When I wake up in the morning, I rinse my mouth. △

Note: You can't be rinsing your mouth the moment you're waking up. Although in English you can get by with saying this sentence with "the very moment you're waking up" not necessarily being implied, this is implied in Japanese, thus causing the sentence to be ungrammatical with 時.

9. 寝たときに、犬を外に行かせる。X

I make the dog go outside after I go to sleep. X

Note: You can't be taking your dog outside after you've already gone to bed unless you've mastered sleep walking.

When 時 is used to show a 前後関係 such as in the previous examples, each verb can be viewed as being independent from each other. For those that have a problem with a future event being used with the past tense, more thought into “after” statements in English needs to be made.

10. ソウルの空港に着いたときに、電話します。
I'll call you after I arrive in the Seoul Airport.

X & Y → Instantaneous

It so happens, though, that when action X and Y are instantaneous and seem to happen at the same time, both the non-past and past tense seem to be able to be used interchangeably before とき without a change of meaning. However, note the detail in this situation. You shouldn't run with this and apply it haphazardly to everything else mentioned in this lesson to the contrary.

11. そのボールが ^は{爆ぜる・爆ぜた} とき、がちゃんと大きな音がした。
There was a big bang right when the ball exploded.

As stated earlier, there are situations where 時 does **not** express a 前後関係. This is evident when both actions X and Y essentially happen simultaneously.

12. 中国^{たいざいちゅう}滞在中、中国料理を食べるときは、^{はし}箸を使いました。
When I was in China, I used chopsticks whenever ate Chinese food.

13. 神戸へ出張するときは、新幹線に乘りました。
I rode the Shinkansen when I went to Kobe.

14. 僕んち（に）入るときは、いつも裏口^{うらぐち}から入ってたんだけど、やめて。(Very colloquial)
Whenever you enter my house, you've always come through the back, but quit it.

Tense Interchangeability

Time phrases in addition to 時 allow for variation in tense before 時. For instance, notice how the word いつも allows either the non-past or the past to be used before 時 though the final verb in the sentence is in the past tense. This is possible because no specific event of the past is being cited. If it were a specific event, the past tense would inevitably be used.

- normal 韓国の方とビビンバを {食べる・食べた} ときは、いつも^{ぎんせい}銀製のお箸で食べました。

Whenever I ate bibimbap with Koreans, I always ate with silver chopsticks.

Word Note: 方 = 人. This is a formal word. You could also say 韓国の人 or 韓国人.

16. 小林さんが講演会を開くときは、多少遠くてもいつも聴きに行きました。
Whenever Mr. Kobayashi opened a lecture seminar, no matter if it was far, I always went to go listen (to his lectures).

17. 雪が {降る・降っている} ときは、図書館で研究書を読んだ。
Whenever it {snowed/was snowing}, I read studies at the library.

18. 電気が {切れる・切れている} ときは、海岸に泳ぎに行った。
When the electricity {cut off, was cut off}, I went to the beach to swim.

With Adjectives

When the main clause is past tense and the adjective before 時 is also in the past tense, 時 gives a rather reminiscent feeling. Otherwise, it wouldn't quite have that feeling.

19. この老犬は若いとき、とても美しかった。
When this old dog was young, it was really beautiful.

20. 君が若かったとき、わしは君を大事にしてやったけど、今はわしの存在を認めてくれないや。(Old person)
When you were young, I would treat you dearly, but now you won't even recognize my existence.

Contraction Note: くりゃしない = くれはしない = a very emphatic くない.

21. 天気が悪い時に、ビデオゲームをした。
When the weather was bad, I played video games.

Particle Note: With the addition of に, the last sentence pinpoints a specific time in the past.

With いる

This is the same with いる. So, for いる, when the actions in the clauses occur in the same time period, either tense can be used when the main sentence is in the past with no change in meaning. The only difference then is that using the past tense gives a stronger sense of looking back in time.

22. 私は埼玉に {いる・いた} 時、二階建ての^{にかいだ}アパートでタイ人の友達と住んでいました。
When I was in Saitama, I lived with a Thai friend in a two story apartment.

When it is the case that the predicate and condition described by いる are not in the same time period, the main clause's action occurs within the range of the action of the dependent clause. So, if the dependent clause action is Y and the main clause action is X, X happens within Y.

23. 僕が海外してたとき、彼女は僕を裏切^{うらぎ}って、友人の知り合いと付き合^あってあいつのマンションに引っ越したんだ！

When I was overseas, my girlfriend dumped me, got together with an acquaintance of a friend of mine and moved into his apartment!

24. メールを読んでたとき、地震があ^あって、とってもびっく^{びく}りしたよ。
An earthquake happened when I was reading my e-mails, and I was really shocked.

With Nominal Phrases

Judgments seen thus far apply for when 時 follows nominal phrases. Notice that の is interchangeable with である in this case. However, when the copula is used, it gives a stronger sense of retrospection or looking into the future. This is due to the introduction of a tense item. Consider other particles that can be used with 時 like から and でも.

25. 僕は学生[の・だった]時、あまり本を読ま^よなかった。
I didn't read a lot of books when I was a student.
26. どんなときでもずっと側^{そば}にいるよ。
I'll be by your side no matter what.
27. 高校に入学したときから、数えて20年が経^へちました。
20 years have passed since I entered high school.

Particle Troubles: ～とき、～ときに、～ときは、～ときには

Of course, に・には・nothing after 時 is problematic. You may have gotten a sense of the differences between them by looking at all of the examples so far, but to address this explicitly, consider the following. As mentioned earlier, ～ときに mentions a certain point in time.

So, ambiguity as to whether something happens at a certain time or not is caused by no^{particle} particle being used. On the other hand, the particle は is emphatic and usually with 時 to

contrast with other times. With **ときには**, you are emphasizing a particular part in time in contrast with other points in time. The following examples give a nice mix of this and the material covered thus far.

28. 日本に行く時には、空港でウィスキーを買いました。

I bought whiskey right before I went to Japan.

29. 食べている時に、テレビは見ません。

I don't watch TV (right) when I'm eating.

30. 学校に行く時、電話します。

When/before I go to school, I'll call you. (before).

31. ^{さくら}桜がきれい[な・だった]時に、日本へ行った。

I went/used to go to Japan when(ever) the cherry blossoms were pretty (in bloom).

32. 分からない時は、先生に聞いてください。

When you don't understand, ask a teacher.

33. お金がないとき、何をしないで我慢がまんしますか。

When you don't have money, what do you endure without?

34. 前回台北に来たときは、誰にも会わなかったが、今回は多くの友人に会いました。

Last time I came to Taipei, I didn't meet anyone, but this time I met a lot of friends.

Reading Note: 台北 is officially read by NHK as **たいほく**. However, many speakers no longer read it this way and say **たいぺい**, perhaps out of respect of the modern Chinese pronunciation. Similarly, though, the standard reading for 北京 (Beijing) is **ぺきん**, which is based off of the older pronunciation of the city's name (Peking).

第64課: Relative Time

Relative time phrases differ from absolute time phrases in that they do not refer to specific instances of time. Like their absolute counterparts, relative time phrases may function as either nouns or adverbs. Typically, their part of speech mirrors what they would be in English. However, this is not always the case.

Important Phrases

Of the many relative time phrases in Japanese, the ones below are the most important to get down. Some of them involve grammar you've already encountered. For instance, **よく** comes from the adjective **よい**. Other phrases

normal

involve prefixes, suffixes, and particles that make them more or less set phrases.


Long ago	<small>むかし</small> 昔	At one time	かつて	Before and after	<small>ぜんご</small> 前後
The other day	先日	Previously	先に	Already	もう
Mostly	たいてい	Later	後で	No longer	もはや
Always	いつも	At once	すぐに	Usually	普通
Frequently	度々	Sometimes	時々	Often	よく
Again	また	Again; twice	<small>ふたた</small> 再び	For a first	はじめて
Seldom	<small>めった</small> 滅多に	Never	ぜんぜん	Never	決して
A while ago	さっき	Every other	～おきに	At about	～ごろ

Usage Notes:

1. ～前後 may mean "back and forth" when not used with time.
2. (の)頃 ころ means "as; when" and is similar to 時.
3. 昔に is not frequently used, but it is seen in compound expressions such as はるか昔に (in the remote past).
4. ふたたびに is incorrect.

Examples

1. 私たちは滅多に {口喧嘩・口論} しません。
We seldom quarrel.
2. 時々スプーンとフォークで食べます。
I sometimes eat with a spoon and fork.
3. 彼女は一日おきに出勤する。
She goes to work every other day.
4. 事故は日曜日の三時頃に起こった。
The accident happened on Sunday at about 3:00.

 (お) よそ五時間の旅となります。

It'll turn into around a five hour trip.

6. 8月の^{なか}半ばに学校に^{もと}戻ります。

I will go back to school in the middle of August.

7. 彼は9時前後にここに^{とうちやく}到着するでしょう。

He'll probably arrive here at around nine o'clock.

8. 僕は子供のころから英語に^{きょうみ}興味があった。

I had an interest in English since I was a kid.

9. 彼を子供のころから知っている。

I have known him since childhood.

10. このごろアメリカへ^{りょこう}旅行する人が多い。

A lot of people are traveling to America nowadays.

Used To

"Used to" is usually expressed with one of two patterns. The pattern ～たものだ is used to reminisce or confirm a past experience with a deep sense of emotion. かつて shows what something "used to be," **not** what one used "to do". かつて when used as noun means "former."

1.	Used to be/was once	嘗（かつ）て＋～た
2.	Used to do	よく＋～た＋～ものだ

Examples

11. 火曜日にはいつも友だちと^つ釣りに行ったものだ。

I used to always like go fishing with my friends on Tuesdays.

12. かつてないほどの^{えんだか}円高だ。

The strong yen is better than ever.

Word Note: The opposite of 円高 is 円安. The suffixes ～高 and ～安 may be used with any world currency such as the ドル (dollar), the ユーロ (euro), and the ウォン (won).

12. ^{だいにじせかいたいせん}かつて、第二次世界大戦にドイツはイタリアと^{どうめいこく}同盟国でありました。(Formal 書き言
normal)

葉)

Germany used to be an ally of Italy in World War II.

14a. かつて住んでいたところはこちらです。 (Literary)

14b. 以前こちらに住んでいました。 (Spoken)

The place I used to live at is here.

15. こんな事件^{じけん}はいまだかつてなかった。

We have not yet had this kind of case ever before.

16. かつて彼らは同僚^{どうりょう}だった。

They were once colleagues.

17. 彼はかつて組織^{そしき}の一員^{いちいん}であった。 (書き言葉)

He used to be a member of the organization.

18. {かつて・旧来} の友 (Somewhat lyrical)

A former friend

Orthography Note: Although rare, かつて may be written in 漢字 as 嘗て.

Customary Action: ～ていた

Customary action may also be expressed with ～ていた. This also equates to "used to."

19. 毎朝ジョギングをしていました。

I used to jog every morning.

20. 中学校の時、毎晩9時^ねに寝ていた。

I used to go to bed every night at nine when I was in junior high.

第65課: Transitivity I: Different Transitive & Intransitive Forms

Most verbs are usually either transitive or intransitive. Transitivity is a concept that helps explain what does what, what does what to whom, and similar questions related to action or state.

The Japanese terms for transitive verbs (他動詞^{たどうし}) and intransitive verbs (自動詞^{じどうし}) are defined below. As transitivity classifications don't always match with their English equivalent, the Japanese terms will be preferred in this discussion.

他動詞	An action done by "someone/thing" on something or someone else (direct object).
自動詞	An action or state that has no active agent and no direct object.

Definition Note: An "agent" in grammar is, simply put, the "doer" of an action. However, just because a verb has "no active agent," this doesn't mean that the verb has "no agent" at all.

There are some verbs like 暮らす which do have an agent, but the agent is "non-active". After all, "people" do "live" out their lives. However, "living" is not the same thing as "cooking a meal" or "driving a car." As opposed to having a non-active agent, "cooking" and "driving" have active agents acting upon a direct object.

As alluded to above, some verbs don't have the same transitivity as their English equivalents. For example, 分かる (to understand) and 要る (to need) are intransitive in Japanese even though their English equivalents are transitive verbs. The reason for these discrepancies is that the two languages describe things from different angles in these instances. More will be discussed about this later.

Rules of Thumb

を with 他動詞 always marks the direct object of a sentence. If it is used with a 自動詞, it essentially means "through".

1. パソコンを捨てる。 (捨てる = 他動詞)
To throw away a PC.
2. 道を歩く。 歩く = 自動詞
To walk through the street.

If you don't see を and the subject is marked with が, it is often safe to assume that the verb is a 自動詞. However, the direct object could be dropped. So, you must take that into consideration. Is it logical for the verb in question to have a direct object?

3. 鳥が歌っている。 (歌う = 他動詞)
The bird is singing.

Transitivity Note: 歌う is a transitive verb because birds sing songs. There is intrinsically always a direct object implied.

4. 車が^と停まった。 (停まる = 自動詞)
The car stopped.

自他動詞: Intransitive & Transitive Verbs

There are upwards of 300 of these verb pairs in Japanese. Most fit nicely into four broad categories with various sub-types. Derivation becomes convoluted very quickly, however. Morphology doesn't always make a language easier. It just explains where things come from and why. As you go through the types of transitivity verb pairs, don't feel that you must memorize every detail being shown. After all, not even the best Japanese scholars have this completely figured out.

Type 1: ある and おる = Intransitive

About a fourth of pairs have an intransitive pair with an r or y suffix usually preceded by either the vowel /a/ or /o/ to the root of a verb (except for Type 1d below). The transitive form may end in -u, -eru, or -ru based on type. The sub-types will be listed by frequency. Frequency here is not frequency in type 1 alone but for ALL verb pairs of all types.

Type 1	Frequency	Intransitive	Example	Transitive	Example
a	~20%	√ -(w)ar-u	上がる (to rise)	√-∅-eru	上げる (to raise)
b	~3%	√-ar-u	^{ふさ} 塞がる	√-∅-u	塞 (ふさ) ぐ (to block)
c	~1%	√-(w)ar-eru	分かれる (to divide/branch)	√-∅-eru	分ける (to split)
d	~.70%	√-[y]-eru	見える (to be in sight)	√-∅-ru	見る (to see)
e	~.33%	√-o[y]-eru	聞こえる (to be heard)	√-∅-u	聞く (to hear)
f	~.33%	√-or-u	^つ 積もる (to pile)	√-∅-u	積む (to pile)
g	~.33%	√-or-eru	^う 埋もれる (to be covered)	√-∅-eru	埋める (to bury/cover)

Chart Note: ∅ is used here to stand for "nothing" that takes the place for where a morpheme (meaning component) would otherwise be located to indicate transitivity explicitly.

Even though there are seven sub-types, many patterns can be observed. The /ar-/ and /or-/ you see actually relate to the verbs ある and おる. The [y] in parentheses is actually silent and is etymologically the same as the /r/ in these derivations.

Type 2: S = Transitive

These verbs all have a transitive form with a stem that ends in s. What else makes up the stem or what follows varies, but this characterizes 30% of all pairs in Japanese. Frequency, normal, refers to frequency among all verb pairs.

Type 2	Frequency	Intransitive	Example	Transitive	Example
a	~14%	√-Ø-eru	^ひ 冷える (to get chilly)	√-(y)as-u	冷やす (to chill)
b	~10%	√-Ø-u	^ち 散る (to scatter)	√-(w)as-u	散らす (to scatter)
c	~2%	√-Ø-iru	^ひ 干る (to dry up)	√-os-u	^ほ 干す (to dry)
d	~1.3%	√-Ø-iru	生きる (to live)	√-as-u	生かす (to keep alive)
e	~1%	√-Ø-ru	着る* (to wear)	√-s-eru	着せる (to clothe)
f	~.70%	√-Ø-eru	^{ふく} 膨れる (to swell)	√-as-eru	膨らせる (to swell)
g	~.33%	√-Ø-u	^{およ} 及ぶ (to extend)	√-os-u	及ぼす (to affect)
h	~.33%	√-Ø-iru	^{ほころ} 綻びる (to come apart)	√-as-eru	綻ばせる (to break into)
i	~.33%	√-Ø-iru	^つ 尽きる (to run out)	√-us-u	尽くす (to exhaust)

*: Although it is technically transitive, its meaning is more like an intransitive verb and this is important for other uses of the verb.

Word Note: 綻ばせる is "to break into" as in "to break into a smile."

Type 3: Once the Same Long Ago

Type 2 and Type 3 are extremely similar. Put together, they indicate that at one point, many transitivity verb pairs probably derived from a single verb which could function as either an intransitive or a transitive verb. This would be just how most English verbs work. As for Type 3, its verbs have morphemes expressed after the root indicating transitivity. Unsurprisingly, the "r/y-s" pattern is used for this.

Type 3	Frequency	Intransitive	Meaning	Transitive	Meaning
a	~8%	√-r-u	^{あま} 余る (to be plenty)	√-s-u	余す (to spare over)
b	s ~6%	√-r-eru	^{あらわ} 現れる (to appear)	√-s-u	現す (to show/appear)
c	r ~1%	√-r-u	乗る (to ride)	√-s-eru	乗せる (to pick up)
d	u ~.70%	√-[y]-eru	^こ 越える (to go over)	√-s-u	越す (to go over)
e	t ~.33%	√-r-iru	^た 足りる (to suffice)	√-s-u	足す (to add)

Type 4: Change in Verb Class

For the above types, a morpheme of some sort is used to go from one transitivity to another. Adding a morpheme to the root of the verb frequently results in a verb that's in a different verb class than its counterpart. For instance, 上がる is a 五段 verb and 上げる is an 一段 verb. The addition of "-ar" to the root of these verbs "ag-" was all that was needed to cause this difference.

For the remaining 25% of verbs, change in verb class alone is what's responsible for transitivity change. Nothing is added to the roots of these verbs to change transitivity. In times past, the basic verb form for these verb pairs looked identical. The only distinguishing aspect they had was having different conjugations. This indicates that these verbs may be remnants of a far older process to derive transitivity pairs. Ironically, however, this type of verb pairs is split into two polar opposite sub-types. This is where memorization becomes especially important.

Type 4	Frequency	Intransitive	Example	Transitive	Example
a	~16%	√-Ø-u	^あ 開く (to open)	√-Ø-eru	開ける (to open)
b	~10%	√-Ø-eru	^わ 割れる (to crack)	√-Ø-u	割る (to crack)

Exceptions Note: There are several exceptions that are important to learn. Those will be found as examples in this lesson.

Examples

Sometimes knowing which verb form to use is not easy. For instance, suppose you have a cat named ニャ子ちゃん. To tell her to hide because a dog is coming, you would say かくれ
て, not かくして. This is because there is only an implied subject (the cat) and an action (hiding). There is no direct object. Had you wanted to say "hide yourself", you would use the transitive form かくす and get 身^みをかくして.

The chart below has a handful of the most important pairs for you to learn.

意義	他動詞	意義	自動詞	意義	他動詞	意義	自動詞
To break	壊す	To be broken	壊れる	To open	開ける	To open	開く
To raise	育てる	To be raised	育つ	To close	閉める	To close	閉まる
To put out	消す	To disappear	消える	To flow	流す	To flow	流れる

normal

To drop	落とす	To fall	落ちる	To stand	立てる	To stand	立つ
To stop	止める	To stop	止まる	To change	変える	To change	変わる
To start/begin	始める	To begin	始まる	To reveal	現す	To appear	現れる
To add	加える	To take part/join	加わる	To (a)wake	さ覚ます	To wake up	覚める
To leave	残す	To remain	残る	To rotate	回す	To rotate	回る

Transitivity Notes:

1. 開く read as あく is an intransitive verb.
2. 開ける read as あける is only transitive and is used to open many things. There are also other spellings of this verb depending on usage. When read as ひらける, it is a more literary, intransitive verb for enlightenment, development, and things being opened up. For instance, you can say 目の前に海がひらけた (the sea opened up in front of our eyes) and 文明がひらけた (civilization has developed).

Meaning Notes:

1. 消える may also mean "to fade", "to go off/out", "to pass", "to vanish", etc. 消す may also mean "to turn off", "to remove", "to erase", "to vanish", "to extinguish", etc.
2. Etymologically, 立つ and 立てる are the same words as 建つ (to be built) and 建てる (to build) respectively. Translation of たつ and たてる, which have other spellings depending on usage, varies. However, you should get the theme of what they mean.
3. 止める read as とめる means "stop" as in "to halt". It can be spelled as 停める (to halt a vehicle), 留める (to restrain; to hold (custody); to leave an impression), and 泊める (to accommodate/lodge). When read as やめる, it means "stop" as in stopping a condition/action. It can be spelled as 辞める (to quit a job). The intransitive form of やめる is やむ.

Spelling Note: Many of these words have additional meanings and additional spellings. Knowing each and every meaning of these verb pairs and the spellings to go with them is too overwhelming for now.

Examples

- はた
5. 旗を上げる。
normal raise a flag.

6. 車が突然止まった。
The car suddenly stopped.

漢字 Note: 停まる = 止まる. The first is more indicative of a temporary stop.

7. 弟がカメラを壊しました。
My younger brother broke the camera.

8. ぼくの新しいカメラが壊れました。
My new camera broke.

9. 川が湖に流れている。
The river is flowing into the lake.

10. タクシーを止めなかったの。
You didn't stop a taxi?

11. ドアを開けました。
I opened the door.

12. 自動ドアが開きました。
The automatic door opened.

13. いつ始まりますか。
When will it start?

14. 気が変わったかわからない。
I don't know if [his/her] mind changed.

15. 妹がテレビをつけました。
My little sister turned on the TV.

16. テレビがつきました。
The TV came on.

17. 涙を流す。
To shed tears.

18. 土が血で染まった。
The ground was dyed with blood.

19. 宿題しゅくだいを始める。
To start one's homework.
20. 電気でんきを消けしました。
I turned off the lights.
21. 電気きが消きえました。
The lights [turned/went] off.
22. {話・話題} を変える。
To change topics.
23. 彼は腹はらが立たった。(Set Phrase)
He got angry.
24. バラうの木が植うわっている。
There are rose bushes planted.
25. バラうの木を植うえました。
I planted a rose bush.

Usage Note: Sometimes a certain verb in a transitivity pair will not be frequently used. For instance, some speakers hardly ever use 植わる.

More Practice

The following sentences will have you choose one of two options. Use additional information and the contents of the lesson to help you choose the right answer.

Questions:

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------|
| 1. オレンジが（落ちる・落とす）。 | Drop |
| 2. 図書館の前に人が（並ぶ・並べる）。 | Line up |
| 3. 日時 <small>にちじ</small> を（決まる・決める）。 | Decide |
| 4. 枝 <small>えだ</small> を（折れる・折る）。 | Bend |
| 5. 勉強を（続く・続ける）。 | Continue |
| 6. 草 <small>も</small> を（燃える・燃やす）。 | Burn |
| 7. 週末を（過ぎる・過ごす）。 | Spend |
| 8. 猫 <small>ねこ</small> を（助かる・助ける）。 | Save |

normal

9. 木が（倒れる・倒す）。	Fall down
10. 仕事 ^ふ が（増える・増やす）。	Increase
11. 数 ^へ が（減る・減らす）。	Decrease
12. 子どもを（育つ・育てる）。	Raise
13. トイレを（流れる・流す）。	Flush
14. 角 ^{かど} を左に（曲 ^ま がる・曲げる）。	Turn
15. ひげを（ ^の 伸びる・伸ばす）。	Grow long

Curriculum Note: Later on in a series of lessons, we will learn about verbs that do not change depending on transitivity. These verbs must be looked at on an individual basis, but because they each require a considerable amount of attention due to their complexity, this will conclude our studies of transitivity for now.

Exercises

Questions:

1. 落ちる 2. 並ぶ 3. 決める 4. 折る 5. 続ける 6. 燃やす 7. 過ごす 8. 助ける
 9. 倒れる 10. 増える
 11. 減る 12. 育てる 13. 流す 14. 曲がる 15. 伸ばす

第66課: The Particle と II: Citation

We've looked at several usages of the case particle と before, but now it's time to learn about how it is used in citation.

Citation

と is also the citation particle, basically spoken quotation marks. This usage often translates to "that". However, grammar within subordinate clauses--those that are embedded within a sentence--is not exactly the same as in English as you will see.

Orthography Note: Actual quotation marks, 「」, are only used in direct quotes.

と言う	To say that	と思う	To think that	と考える	To consider that
-----	-------------	-----	---------------	------	------------------

Basic Grammatical Restraints in Citation

normal In direct quotation, the quoted verb may be in any form because you're telling what someone

has said. So, sentences like below are completely correct.

1. 彼女は「雨が降りません」と言いました。
She said, "It won't rain."

It is common to just see と in abbreviated speech. This means that the citation verb is just implied. It is often the case that the verb is 言う, but full context will make it clear which citation verb is intended. If such deletion is within a more complex sentence, a comma is *often* after と, and the citation verb is probably the final verb of a following clause. Having said that, though, below is a sentence where neither is the case.

2. もうそんな寒さかと島村は外を眺めると、鉄道の官舎らしいバラックが山裾に寒々と散らばっているだけで、

雪の色はそこまで行かぬうちに闇に呑まれていた。

When Shimamura gazed outside, thinking it had already gotten cold, railroad residence-like barracks were desolately dispersed at the foot of the mountains, and before the snow hues could reach that far, the barracks were swallowed by darkness.

From 雪国 by 川端康成.

Particle Note: The quotation is of a thought. The thought is もうそんな寒さか. The verb that is implied, then, is 思う. The sentence would, then, be もうそんな寒さかと思い. 思い is just like 思っ here.

漢字 Note: 呑む means "to swallow," but it is usually spelled as 飲む nowadays.

Grammar Note: 行かぬうちに = 行かないうちに.

Ungrammatical?

For verbs of thought both the citation and cited verb mustn't be polite. Your thoughts aren't in polite speech. Thus, the final verb should be what takes ～ます. Furthermore, Japanese hates for the same purpose being expressed twice in the same clause or phrase.

3a. 雨が降りませんと思います。X

3b. 雨が降らないと思います。○

I think that it won't rain.

For **other people's** thoughts, the verb of thought must be used with ～ている. You can also use the progressive for first person too. Now, for other citation verbs like "to say", polite speech is OK only in a direct quote.

normal

- 4a. 彼はどう思うの? X
4b. 彼はどう思ってるの? O (ちょっとくだけた)
What is he thinking?
-

Tense and Negation with Citation

What about the past and negative? Either verb can be changed but not both. Again, Japanese avoids function words being doubled. If both are negative, you make a positive. If both are past, your sentence becomes difficult to interpret and sounds unnatural.

The choice you make in deciding which is negative or past does slightly change nuance. Some combinations are more common than others, but none are ungrammatical. However, speaker variation does exist. For instance, for the negative, 5b is preferred over 5d by many speakers.

- 5a. 雨が降ったと思う。 = I think that it rained.
5b. 雨が降らないと思う。 = I think that it won't rain.
5c. 雨が降ると思った。 = I thought it would rain.
5d. 雨が降ると思わない。 = I don't think that it will rain.

The second and last are similar, but the last is more emphatic. This is because you're rejecting that "雨が降る" is what you think. You'd generally say "雨が降らないと思う".

Consider the following. Do not do this. This is a clear example of why doubling past tense items in Japanese is a big problem. This does not negate the existence of past tense in a relative clause or the main clause. In context, this may work to show that you thought something had ended.

6. 「映画を見て、どう思いましたか？」
「スリルがあって面白かったと思いました」 X・△

This is something a kid might say in Japanese. It's best not to mimic this, but it is important to know that some speakers might use it, but it would certainly not be refined Japanese. The speaker meant to say "I thought (the movie) was interesting". Remember, と quotes the thought that one has. When you're watching the movie, you think it's おもしろい.

おもしろかったと思う is possible, but it would express that "you think that it was cool". For example, a show could be discontinued and you are saying what you think about the show in retrospect. This is similar for other expressions with the cited verb/adjective in the past tense and the main citing verb in the non-past.

If the 〜た were used to show completion (完了), then 〜たと〜た would be correct. To insert normalた due to English tense agreement in a Japanese sentence with no need for this, it

becomes strange Japanese, to say the least.

7. 梅雨はもう終わったと思ったのですが、どうやらまだ続いているようですね。

I thought that the rainy season had already ended, but it appears to still be going, doesn't it?

Examples

8. 彼の祖父は偉大な学者だったという。
そ ふ いだい がくしゃ

They say that his grandfather was a great scholar.

9. 山田さんは「英語は難しいですよ」と言いました。

Ms. Yamada said, "English is hard!"

10. 妹はサンタ・クロースは来ないと思っています。

My little sister thinks that Santa Claus won't come.

11. ○○さんのことは友人だと考えている。
ゆうじん

To regard ○○ as a friend.

12. 花子が先生に英語でいいえと答えました。
こた

It is Hanako that told the teacher no in English.

Culture Note: The above is not a direct quotation because it's highly unlikely that Hanako actually said いいえ. A quote is likely to be a summary. Japanese speakers are always conscious of their relations to others. So, Hanako probably said じつは、そうではありません。

Citation と + する

The last thing we'll look at is とする. This is specifically about uses that are really just an extension of と's citation usage.

1.	To presume that...
2.	A euphemism of という, と考える, or と主張する

13. その政党が過半数を取ったとする。
せいとう かはんすう

normal

To presume that the party takes the majority.

14. 気象庁では津波の心配はないとしています。

The Meteorological Center is saying that there is no worry of a tsunami.

第67課: The Particle でも

でも、でも、もう。。。。

The Adverbial Particle でも

でも is like "even" and often lessens the tone of a sentence. In the latter case, it is seen in contexts where the speaker is often trying to make some sort of suggestion or offer to someone. Options are implied given the literal interpretation of "even". This is meant to be less direct so one doesn't sound pushy.

でも is simply the て形 of the copula with も. So, ～ても is very similar but with adjectives and verbs to mean "even though". The negative form of this is ～なくても or ～ないでも, although the latter is uncommon and rather literary.

Part of Speech	Pattern	Meaning
名詞	でも	～Even
形容詞	～ても	～(Even) though
形容動詞	～（であつ）ても	～(Even) though
動詞	～ても・でも	～ (Even) though

Although there are situations where translation may change, the general purpose of these modals is to make a 逆接関係, which is Japanese terminology for a contradictory relationship. This should make sense in light of the translations above.

Particle Note: It is not used with particles such as が, を, and は, but it can be seen after other particles such as に, と, から, and まで. However, in slightly older Japanese, you can see combinations such as ～をでも. It is not advisable to use this as it is, again, not used anymore.

Origin Note: でも comes from the て form of だ + も.

Examples

normal

1. 先生**でも**分からないな。(Masculine)
Even the teacher doesn't understand it.
2. お茶^{ちゃ}**でも**飲みますか。
Literally: Do you want to drink **even** (if it's) tea?
Shall we drink tea or something?
3. ここ**でも**、あそこ**でも**、子供が遊んでいます。
There are children playing here and even over there.
4. あの人のいうことは、満更嘘^{まんざらうそ}**でもない**。
What that person says isn't all a lie.
5. 彼は**またしても**「お願いします」と来た。^{ねが}
He came **again** saying, "Please."
- 6a. 彼が言わない**でも**、分かるでしょう。(Usually don't use)
- 6b. 彼が言わなく**ても**、分かるでしょう。(More natural)
Even if he **doesn't** say, you'll probably understand.
7. どう**でも**いい。
I don't care.
Literally: **Whatever** it is, it's OK.
8. コーヒー**でも**どう？おごるよ。
How about a coffee on me?
9. どんなことがあ**っても**、絶対に行くんだ。(Assertive)^{ぜったい}
No matter what, I'm definitely going to go!
10. 雨が降って**いても**、ゲームは楽しかった。^ふ
Even though it had been raining, I enjoyed the game.
11. いずれにしても飲酒運転は絶対にしません。
In any case, I absolutely do not drink and drive.
12. 私でも分かります。
Even I understand.
13. そんな例は**いくつでも**見つかる。
You can find **ever so many** such examples.

14. 彼は貧しくても^{まず}幸^{しあわ}せだ。
He is happy **even** though he is poor.
15. メキシコでは、冬になっても、雪が降^ふらない。
It doesn't snow in Mexico **even** in the winter.
16. 居ても立ってもいられなかった。
I couldn't sit still.

Set Phrase Note: This last phrase literally means that one couldn't even be sitting or standing. 居る originally meant "to sit", and it is used in its original sense in this phrase.

何と言っても: Undeniably (lit. = no matter what they say)

17. 何といってもこの曲が一番だよね。
No matter what you say, this song is the best.
18. 何といっても^{いのち}命^{だいじ}だけは大事だ。
Life is **no doubt** but the only important thing.

でいい is like "it's all right/OK to", でかまわない is like "I don't care/mind if you", and でさしつかえない is like "it won't interfere if you". All three generally represent the same thing, and their purpose is to show permission. でも can be used instead of で, and the inclusion of も makes the phrases less direct. でも may appear as ても as these are also て form speech modals.

19. 新しくなくてもいいですか。
Is it **OK** if it's **not** new?
20. 中古車^{ちゅうこしゃ}でもかまいませんか。
Do you mind if it's a used vehicle?
21. 参加^{さんか}しなくてもいいでしょうか。
Is it all right for me not to participate?
22. 心配^{しんぱい}しなくていいから。
It's **all right** **not** to worry.
23. トイレ^{つか}を使っていいですか。
May I use the bathroom?

normal

Classroom Note: The above sentence is an essential classroom phrase.

24. 家は古くてもさしつかえませんか。
Is it **all right** if the house is old?

25. 十一階のシングルルームでよろしいですか。
Is a single room on the eleventh floor **all right**?

26. **どれでも**けっこうですよ。
Anything will do.

27. 何をやっても一日と続かない。
No matter what you do, it won't continue for another day.

～ても

This pattern is used to show that no matter what you do with whatever means necessary, you carry it out. The verb phrase that follows should be one that shows intention. This phrase is typically translated as "no matter if", but let this not detract from the fact that what follows is a statement of what is/should be carried out rather than showing despair.

28. 若い時の苦勞は買ってでもせよ。(Proverb)
By all means do so no matter if you buy hardships in youth.

Proverb Note: This proverb says that hardships when you're young become great experiences for the future, so it is best to seek them out.

29. 金で買ってでも、苦勞した方がいいのは、若いうちだけだ。
No matter if you buy with money, it's only best to have hardships when one is young.

第68課: The Particle や

Here is yet another particle you can use to list things. It also does other things, though. Listing, as you would imagine, is a case particle usage. After all, that's what と is in this case. And, this usage is specifically seen in between nominal phrases. Notice how the word "nominal" used instead of just "noun." This means that you can link things with や that are grammatically made nouns.

After all, や is a particle. Do you really expect one to have just ONE usage? Its other usages are not as important, and some will be deferred to other lessons. Although the remaining usages discussed in this lesson may seem out of place, since they are relatively easy, you might as well know about them.

The Case Particle や

や **lists things incompletely**. This means that there is a sense that there are more related things implied. It may list nouns, phrases, and even clauses like "and", but it more so lists in categories.

- ピクニックには、お菓子^{かし}や飲み物^{もの}を持って行った。
We brought candies, drinks, etc. to the picnic.
- 家は電車^{でんしゃ}やバス^{ていりゅうじょう}の停留場^{べんり}に近くてとても便利なところですよ。
My home is close to the stations, bus, train, etc., and it's (in) a very convenient place.
- 牛^はや馬^はが草むらで草を食む。
Cows and horses graze in grassy places.
- 東京^{かんこく}や韓国^{ひこうき}へ行く時や、飛行機^{ひこうき}で行きます。
Whenever I go to Tokyo, Korea, etc., I go by plane.
- 何やかや言っでは両親^はにお金をせびる。
To say this and that to get money from one's parents.

Word Note: The か in the above expression is not the particle か. Rather, it can be written in 漢字 as 彼, the same character for "he" and actually has the same origin as かれ. Both are demonstrative words, and in this case, it is being used as an indefinite pronoun.

The Adverbial Particle や

This classification of や happens to not be as important as the conjunctive usage, which is why more must be said of it. Attached to an adverb and accompanied with a statement of exclamation, it strengthens the meaning of the adverb that it is attached to. This is rather limited, so it is best that you only use this with set phrases and other instances that you see it used in. For instance, the first example has またもや, which happens to be a common set example of this.

- またもや^{しっぱい}失敗^{しっぱい}しました。
I lost yet again.
- 今^{おそ}や遅^{しょうり}しと勝利^わを待ち侘びていた。
He was just impatiently tired of waiting for victory.

○ 彼の言葉に、祥子はまたもや目頭を熱くした。

normal

His words made Sachiko yet again move to tears.
From 冷たい誘惑 by 乃南アサ.

第69課: The Particle し

This particle is especially important for daily conversation. So, make sure you understand it before leaving this lesson!

Curriculum Note: The し seen in phrases such as 過ぎ去りし日 is not the particle し. Rather, it is the attribute form of a classical ending for past event. Thus, it will not be discussed in this lesson.

使い方

し is used to emphatically list similar situations and is after the ^{しゅうしけい}終止形 of a verb or adjective.

動詞	吸 <u>う</u> し	形容詞	高 <u>い</u> し	形容動詞	簡単 <u>だ</u> し	だ	バカ <u>だ</u> し
----	--------------	-----	--------------	------	---------------	---	---------------

It's often used in descriptions from a certain viewpoint that links certain aspects of a particular subject. It can list good things and bad things and also show contrast.

1. お金もないし、車もない（し）。
I don't have money or a car.
2. 彼女は顔も美しいし、背も高いし、性格もいい（し）。
She has a beautiful face, she's tall, and she has a good personality...
3. 彼氏は、タバコも吸 {う・います} し、お酒も飲みます。
My boyfriend smokes and drinks.
4. その映画は見たいし、お金はないし、どうしよう。
I want to watch that movie, but I don't have the money...what am I going to do...

Politeness Note: し may follow ～ます, but it is required in the final verb of a polite statement. Other verbs in the sentence may optionally have ～ます as well.

し is most frequently seen in sentences like Ex. 1 and 2 showing parallel situations (並列). Note that the particle も shows up in this situation instead of が (Ex. 1 and 2) or を (Ex. 3).

Sentences of contrast (対比) is very similar to listing bad situations as they are both bad in the sense that they contradict with each other and that's causing the speaker grief. Here, we see that the particle after the nouns is は. After all, it has the function for showing contrast.

Contrast does not require the phrases be in the negative.

5. 歯は痛いし、歯医者には行きたくないし、困ったよ。
My teeth hurt, but I don't want to go to the doctor, I'm in a rut!

6. 台風は来るし、仕事はあるし、本当に困ったよ。
The typhoon's coming, but I got my job. And so, I'm really at a loss.

Usually, the use of し regardless of how it is used leads to showing some sort of reason. So, you often see ～し～（し）で and ～し～から. A difference between this し and から is that even when there is one thing stated, more parallel (or contrasting) things are implied with し. This is **not so** with から! Thus, they can occur with each other.

7. お金もあるし、プリウスでも買おうか。
We have the money, so why don't we buy a Prius?

8. 今日は日曜（日）だし天気もいいから、散歩に行きましょう。
Today is Sunday, and the weather is fine. So, let's go out for a walk.

9. 職は失うし、妻とは別れるし（で）、彼はひどく元気がない。
Losing his job, splitting up with his wife, he is really depressed.

10. どうせ暇ですし（本当にやりたい、等） ≈ どうせ暇ですから。
At any rate, I'm free. So...

If, however, you are showing any sort of comparison or contrast that comes about as a consequence of X, then you are stating things in terms of a ～ば conditional. The only difference between ～ば and ～し in this case, aside from obvious conjugation differences (～ば goes after the いぜん形), the former is a conditional. And so, "if X is such, then Y must also be such". The such can be a comparison or a contrast, and this relation always implies reason.

11. 金もなければ暇もない。
If one has no money, then one has no free time.

12. 頭も良ければ、スポーツも出来る。
If you are smart, you can also do sports.

13. 頭のいい人もいれば、（頭の）悪い人もいる。
If there are smart people, there are also dumb people.

Grammar Note: The deletion of 頭の is more natural, but the addition of it would be the

normal

sentence more parallel.

14. 歩いてても歩いてても緑もなければ、獲物もない。

No matter if you walk and walk, if there are no greens, there is no prey.

15. 晴れの日もあれば、雨の日もあれば、曇りの日もありますよ。

If there are clear days, and if there are rainy days, there are also cloudy days.

Grammar Note: Having two conditional phrases with the same Y final phrase is OK!

16. 風も吹けば雨も降る、寒い日もあれば、暑い日もある。

If there are days in which the wind blows with the rainfall, then there are also days that are hot.

Grammar Note: Notice how this pattern is compounded.

17. 先日は、[風も吹けば雨も降る] で、すごく大変でした。

The other day was one of those days when if the wind blows it rains, so it was really awful.

Grammar Note: Sometimes, you may see entire phrases treated as a set phrase like this.

Another thing to note is how the particle し appears as a final particle. This is very colloquial, and although the particle overall is 話し言葉的, this particular usage would not be appropriate for 書き言葉. Also, in really くだけた speech, we even see しね. This is often used when there is but one thing mentioned and し is almost like a filler word to be less direct.

18. 今日は天気も悪いしね。

And today, the weather's bad.

19. 寒いと、風邪も引きますし・・・。

If it's cold, you'll get a cold.

20. 風邪も引くし、熱も出るしね。

You'll get a cold and a fever, you know.

21. 「あなたはいつアメリカに帰りますか」「今のところ、帰るつもりはないんです。帰っても景気が悪い（です）しね」

"When will you return home to America?" "At this point, I don't plan to return. Even if I went home, the economy is bad and such"

22. 新しい洋服はほしいし、お金はないし、学生の 懐^{ふところ} は寂しいなあ。
I want to buy new clothes, but I have no money, a student's finances are depressing.
23. 彼の体は大きいし、力も強い。
His body is large, and he is very strong.
24. 田中さんもそう言いましたし、鈴木さんもそう言いました。
Mr. Tanaka said so, and Mr. Suzuki said so too.
25. 風は強いし、雪は降り出したし、今日は出かけるのはやめるわよ。(Feminine)
It's very windy, it's started to snow, so I'm going to quit on going out today.
26. 気分が悪いし忙しいから出かけられませんね。
Since I'm sick and busy, I won't go out, OK?
27. 彼はまだ若いんだし、いくらでもやり直せるね。
He's still young, so he has as many times as he wants to redo things.
28. 駅からは遠いしバスもないしで大変です。
It's terrible that we're too far from the train station and that there aren't any buses.
29. 畑中先生は熱心だし、まじめだし、たくさんの経験もあります。
Hatanaka Sensei is earnest, diligent, and has a lot of experience.
30. 駅から遠いし、車でも来られないし、この店はとっても不便だよ。
This store is very inconvenient since it's far from the train station and you can't even get to it by car.

Grammar/Curriculum Note: ～られない makes the negative potential form for 一段 verbs and 来る.

2. ～ {では・でも} あるまいし expresses a light sense of contempt meaning "it's not as if...". If the two parts are parallel, then this pattern stresses reason. If the two parts are contrasting, then the phrase means ～ないのに.

This usage is one of the only usages in which the auxiliary ～まい is still even used. Its meaning is just like ～ないだろう. Even though it is usually old-fashioned, it is even found in colloquial conversations in this expression. However, if the first clause is lengthy, there is no particle deletion before ～まい. Though you may see it in conversation, its use is still following down even in this usage, and so あるまい is usually replaced by ない.

31. 冬^{ふゆ}でも {ない・ない} し、厚^{あつ}いシャツを着てるんだから、暑^{あつ}くないでしょう。(ちょっと砕けた言い方)

It's not as if it's even winter, and since you're wearing a thick shirt, aren't you hot?

32. 彼は、選手になれるわけじゃ {ない・あるまい} し、悪くはない。

Although it's not like he can become an athlete, he's not that bad.

33. 他人^{たにん}じゃ {ない・あるまい} し、水臭^{みずくさ}いじゃん？ (砕けた言い方)

It's not as if he's a stranger, so isn't he stand-offish?

Contraction Note: Remember that じゃ is the contraction of では.

参照: <http://web.ydu.edu.tw/~uchiyama/conv/shishi.htm>

第70課: こそあと IV: More こそあと

This lesson will go over many similar こそあと. Many are interrelated with each other, and so nuance differences will be a major take-out from this lesson.

Interrelated こそあと

There are many こそあと phrases used to describe what something is like. Of course, the "what" is replaced with a こそあと. So, remember that you can't use こそあと if what you're referencing cannot be inferred from context. The words below are the basic phrases for "like...". The first four are the most important.

	Like this	Like that	Like that*	What sort of...	Any
Attribute	こんな	そんな	あんな	どんな	いかな**
End of a Sentence	このようだ	そのようだ	あのようだ	どのようだ	

*: "Like that" involves understanding basic differences between それ and あれ. そんな sounds less distant than あんな in terms of feeling towards whatever style is being referred to. This is in regards to both the speaker and listener. そんな may even be used as an interjection similar to "no way!".

** : いかな is a contraction of いかなる. Both words are not common and are essentially 書き言葉. The latter is far more common in writing. You may never see いかな, but it finishes the series of demonstratives here.

As you can see, these are all contractions involving the noun よう (様). This word literally means "appearance". These abbreviated forms are more casual. The attribute forms may actually be used at the end of dependent and independent clauses, but it is not as frequent for them to be in that position. These forms may even be followed by particles such as **ので** and **のに**.

Variant Phrases

Various other methods can be used to make "like..." phrases. For instance, you can add the filler word 風 read as ふう, which also means "style", to the attribute forms mentioned above. Or, you can use a series of adverbial **こそあと** which simply start with the sounds but have long vowels instead. To use them as attribute phrases, you either use **した**, **いう**, or **いった**.

Attribute	文尾*	Attribute	文尾	Attribute	文尾
こんな風 {の・ な}	こんな 風だ	こうし た	こうしたも のだ	こういう (風 {の・ な})	こう (いう 風) だ
そんな風 {の・ な}	そんな 風だ	そうし た	そうしたも のだ	そういう (風 {の・ な})	そう (いう 風) だ
あんな風 {の・ な}	あんな 風だ	ああし た	ああしたも のだ	ああいう (風 {の・ な})	ああ (いう 風) だ
どんな風 {の・ な}	どんな 風だ	どうし た	どうしたも のか	どういう (風 {の・ な})	どう (いう 風) か

*: 文尾 = End of the sentence.

1. The 〜いう series is more objective than the first series with or without 風.
2. The addition of 風 is even more common in the spoken language. Traditionally, the first column is bad Japanese. Another issue is the use of な. の is much more common as it is traditionally correct. However, な is acceptable to most speakers. If in doubt, choose の.
3. When you use **いった** instead of **いう**, rather than grouping similar things together, you're describing them separately.
4. どういった sounds like you're interrogating someone on something whereas **どのような** is formal with no such nuance.

1. ああいう時計^{とけい}

A watch like that

2. どんな講座^{こうざ}を受けていますか。^う

What kind of course are you taking?

3. そんな方法^{ほうほう}のことは一度^{いちど}も聞かなかった。

I never heard of a method like that.

4. こういう事情^{じじょう}なので

Such being the case

5. 背後^{はいご}にどうい葉^はっぱ（の色）がくるかが大事^{だいじ}です。

What kind of color the leaves will come in the background is important.

Grammar Note: Remember that the particle か in situations like this is used to make relative clauses.

6. これはどういう意味^{いみ}ですか。

What does this mean?

7. 公園^{こうえん}にはそのような小鳥^{ことり}がたくさんいます。

There are many such birds in the park.

8. キャンディーやアイスクリーム、私はこういう甘いものが好きです。

I like sweet things like candy and ice cream. (Groups things similar together)

9. キャンディーやアイスクリーム、私はこういった甘いものが好きです。

I like sweet things like candy and like ice cream. (Mentions things as separate examples)

10. {こういう ○・このような △・こうした} 色の服が欲しい。

I want clothes of this color.

11. あの人はどんなマナー違反をしていますか。

What sort of breaches of manner is that person committing?

Culture Note: Japan is a very 規則正しい society. Violating socially understood rules of behavior is bad, but in Japan, a lot of things that are not thought as being bad etiquette in America happen to be frowned upon in Japan. Some of the worst things people complain about in Japan include the following.

ポイ捨て (Littering)	平気で遅刻 (Coming late all fine)
電車で化粧をする (Doing make-up on the train)	あいさつしない (Not greeting)
大声で話す (Speaking loudly)	ヘッドホンの音漏れ (Hearing sound from headphones)

Adverbial Forms

We have yet to address that these forms can be made into adverbs. The interrogative columns will not be mentioned. It's important to note that the final column is frequently used for showing method.

こんな →こんなに	こう	こういう風に	こうやって
そんな →そんなに	そう	そういう風に	そうやって
あんな →あんなに	ああ*	ああいう風に	ああやって

*: ああ in this sense is limited to specific phrases such as ああでも and ああいえば.

Examples

12. そんなに急がないでね。 (Familiar)
Don't be in such a hurry.

13. そうは思いません。 (Contrastive)
I don't think so.

14. こんなに^{おそ}遅いとは知らなかった。
I didn't realize how late it was.

15. そういう風に英語を勉強します。
I study English that sort of way.

16. 映像をこうやって作ります。
You create a clip like this.

いかにも

いかにも shows us that the adverbial series may also be followed by the emphatic も. Early,

normal

it was said that forms of いか are not used in the spoken language, but this is the one exception. So, this is actually an important word. いかにも is similar in meaning to "indeed".

17. いかにも得意^{とくい}そうに
With evident pride

18. いかにもその通り^{とお}だよ。
You can say that again!

+ (い) ら

～いら can be added to the こそあど for place to create "...area/neighborhood" phrases. So, ここいら = This area. You may drop the い in these phrases. You may see ～辺 attached to ～ら. So, ここら辺 is "these surroundings".

An important set phrase with this grammar is ～かそこいら, which can show approximated value/amount.

19. 13歳^{わかそう}かそこいらの若僧。
A young person around 13 years old.

20. 歩数^{ほすう}は千歩かそこらだ。
The number of steps is around 1000.

21. 一時間かそこら待った。
I waited for about an hour.

Another interesting phrase is そんなそこらの, which is a very emphatic form of そこら, which is in turn a form of そこいら. This is often used with a tangible noun afterward. It points out something as not being of the ordinary, but the word is still rather vague and ambiguous in regards to degree.

22. あの会社はそんなそこらの人じゃ受からないよ。
No ordinary person would get through at that company.

23. 彼女はそんなそこらの女とは違う。
She's quite different from just the ordinary woman.

24. そんなそこらのチョコレートでは満足しない。
I'm not satisfied with just ordinary chocolate.

第70課: こそあと IV: More こそあと

This lesson will go over many similar こそあと. Many are interrelated with each other, and so nuance differences will be a major take-out from this lesson.

Interrelated こそあと

There are many こそあと phrases used to describe what something is like. Of course, the "what" is replaced with a こそあと. So, remember that you can't use こそあと if what you're referencing cannot be inferred from context. The words below are the basic phrases for "like...". The first four are the most important.

	Like this	Like that	Like that*	What sort of...	Any
Attribute	こんな	そんな	あんな	どんな	いかな**
End of a Sentence	このようだ	そのようだ	あのようだ	どのようだ	

*: "Like that" involves understand basic differences between それ and あれ. そんな sounds less distant than あんな in terms of feeling towards whatever style is being referred to. This is in regards to both the speaker and listener. そんな may even be used as an interjection similar to "no way!".

** : いかな is a contraction of いかなる. Both words are not common and are essentially 書き言葉. The latter is far more common in writing. You may never see いかな, but it finishes the series of demonstratives here.

As you can see, these are all contractions involving the noun よう (様). This word literally means "appearance". These abbreviated forms are more casual. The attribute forms may actually be used at the end of dependent and independent clauses, but it is not as frequent for them to be in that position. These forms may even be followed by particles such as ので and のに.

Variant Phrases

Various other methods can be used to make "like..." phrases. For instance, you can add the filler word 風 read as ふう, which also means "style", to the attribute forms mentioned above. Or, you can use a series of adverbial こそあと which simply start with the sounds but have long vowels instead. To use them as attribute phrases, you either use した, いう, or いった.

Attribute	文尾*	Attribute	文尾	Attribute	文尾
normal					

こんな風 {の・ な}	こんな 風だ	こうし た	こうしたも のだ	こういう (風 {の・ な})	こう (いう 風) だ
そんな風 {の・ な}	そんな 風だ	そうし た	そうしたも のだ	そういう (風 {の・ な})	そう (いう 風) だ
あんな風 {の・ な}	あんな 風だ	ああし た	ああしたも のだ	ああいう (風 {の・ な})	ああ (いう 風) だ
どんな風 {の・ な}	どんな 風だ	どうし た	どうしたも のか	どういう (風 {の・ な})	どう (いう 風) か

*: 文尾 = End of the sentence.

1. The 〜いう series is more objective than the first series with or without 風.
2. The addition of 風 is even more common in the spoken language. Traditionally, the first column is bad Japanese. Another issue is the use of な. の is much more common as it is traditionally correct. However, な is acceptable to most speakers. If in doubt, choose の.
3. When you use いった instead of いう, rather than grouping similar things together, you're describing them separately.
4. どういった sounds like you're interrogating someone on something whereas どのような is formal with no such nuance.

Examples

1. ああいう時計
A watch like that
 2. どんな講座を受けていますか。
What kind of course are you taking?
 3. そんな方法のことは一度も聞かなかった。
I never heard of a method like that.
 4. こういう事情なので
Such being the case
- normal
 はいご 些後に どういう 葉っぱ (の色) が くるかが 大事です。

What kind of color the leaves will come in the background is important.

Grammar Note: Remember that the particle か in situations like this is used to make relative clauses.

6. これはどういう意味ですか。

What does this mean?

7. 公園にはそのような小鳥がたくさんいます。

There are many such birds in the park.

8. キャンディーやアイスクリーム、私はこういう甘いものが好きです。

I like sweet things like candy and ice cream. (Groups things similar together)

9. キャンディーやアイスクリーム、私はこういった甘いものが好きです。

I like sweet things like candy and like ice cream. (Mentions things as separate examples)

10. {こういう ○・このような △・こうした} 色の服が欲しい。

I want clothes of this color.

11. あの人はどんなマナー違反をしていますか。

What sort of breaches of manner is that person committing?

Culture Note: Japan is a very 規則正しい society. Violating socially understood rules of behavior is bad, but in Japan, a lot of things that are not thought as being bad etiquette in America happen to be frowned upon in Japan. Some of the worst things people complain about in Japan include the following.

ポイ捨て (Littering)	平気で遅刻 (Coming late all fine)
電車で化粧をする (Doing make-up on the train)	あいさつしない (Not greeting)
大声で話す (Speaking loudly)	ヘッドホンの音漏れ (Hearing sound from headphones)

Adverbial Forms

We have yet to address that these forms can be made into adverbs. The interrogative columns will not be mentioned. It's important to note that the final column is frequently used for showing method.

こんな → こんなに	こう	こういう風に	こうやって
------------	----	--------	-------

normal

そんな → そんなに	そう	そういう風に	そうやって
あんな → あんなに	ああ*	ああいう風に	ああやって

*: ああ in this sense is limited to specific phrases such as ああでも and ああいえば.

Examples

12. そんなに急がないでね。(Familiar)
Don't be in such a hurry.

13. そうは思いません。(Contrastive)
I don't think so.

14. こんなに^{おそ}遅いとは知らなかった。
I didn't realize how late it was.

15. そういう風に英語を勉強します。
I study English that sort of way.

16. 映像をこうやって作ります。
You create a clip like this.

いかにも

いかにも shows us that the adverbial series may also be followed by the emphatic も. Early, it was said that forms of いか are not used in the spoken language, but this is the one exception. So, this is actually an important word. いかにも is similar in meaning to "indeed".

17. いかにも^{とくい}得意そうに
With evident pride

18. いかにも^{とお}その通りだよ。
You can say that again!

+ (い) ら

～いら can be added to the こそあど for place to create "...area/neighborhood" phrases. So, ここいら = This area. You may drop the い in these phrases. You may see ～辺

normalhed to ～ら. So, ここら辺 is "these surroundings".

An important set phrase with this grammar is ～かそこいら, which can show approximated value/amount.

19. 13歳^{わかぞう}かそこいらの若僧。

A young person around 13 years old.

20. 歩数^{ほすう}は千歩かそこらだ。

The number of steps is around 1000.

21. 一時間かそこら待った。

I waited for about an hour.

Another interesting phrase is そんなところの, which is a very emphatic form of そこら, which is in turn a form of そこいら. This is often used with a tangible noun afterward. It points out something as not being of the ordinary, but the word is still rather vague and ambiguous in regards to degree.

22. あの会社はそんなところの人じゃ受からないよ。

No ordinary person would get through at that company.

23. 彼女はそんなところの女とは違う。

She's quite different from just the ordinary woman.

24. そんなところのチョコレートでは満足しない。

I'm not satisfied with just ordinary chocolate.

第71課: Absolute Time IV: While I: 間

This lesson will be about the word 間.

間

間 literally means "between". This can be used in a physical or spacial sense. However, what we want to focus on here is how this is applied to temporal situations. 間 with time phrases means "while". The actions in the first and second clause respectively aren't necessarily happening at the same time. However, the latter action does happen within the time frame of the first.

Following nouns, 間 should always be used with の because 間 itself is a noun. When following verbs to mean "while", the verb should be in the ～ている pattern for our purposes now. As you will see, you can attach 間 to nouns of condition, adjectives, and verbs.

normal

Particle Note: If the events are simultaneously occurring, you should use the particle **ながら** instead.

Tense Note: For this section, we will consider only **～ている** for when using verbs. We will later see in this lesson how to use **～ていた** and return to the question of how to use "Non-past + 間に".

Examples

1. 食べている ^{あいだ} 間は、テレビを見ません。

I don't watch TV while I eat.

2. しばらくの間、^{どうが} 動画を見ていた。

I was watching a video/movie/clip for a while.

3. 宿題をしている間、ピザを食べた。

I ate pizza while I did my homework.

4. ロンドンに滞在している間にシェイクスピアの^{せいたんち} 生誕地を^{おとず} 訪れます。

I'll visit Shakespeare's birthplace during my stay in London.

5. 夜の間に^{かざむ} 風向きは東に変わった。

The wind shifted to the east during the night.

Reading Note: 風向き may also be read as **かぜむき**. However, this is not as common and some speakers may think it is incorrect.

6. {雨がザーザー^ふ 降ってる・土砂^{どしゃぶ} 降りの} 間、中にいた。(Casual)

I was inside while it was pouring rain.

7. 国会は夏の^{こっかい} 間は^{なつ} 休会^{きゅうかい} になりました。

Congress adjourned for the summer.

8. しばらくの間、^{であし} 出足がよかった。

There was a good turn-out for some time.

9. 二人の間^さ を裂くのはだめだよ！ (The physical sense of 間)

Separating people is wrong!

Grammar Note: ～間に is used with instantial verbs while ～間 is used with durational verbs.

～ていた間に

This form of the pattern does exist, but you should always pay close attention to differences when changing tense. For instance, ～た間に is **always bad**. Yet, regardless of whether ～ている or ～ていた is used, "A+間に+B" still shows that A and B were **during** the same time period. And, oddly, ～た is bad, ～ていた is OK.

10. 彼氏が晩ご飯の支度をして {いる・いた} 間に、宿題をすませた。
かれし したく
I finished my homework while my boyfriend was preparing dinner.

11. 子供が昼寝をして {いる・いた} 間に、本を読み終えた。
ひるね
While the kids were taking a nap, I finished reading {a/the} book.

Though there isn't a fundamental change in meaning, one slight nuance difference that you can get is that ～ていた間に is used in situations when the speaker treats A as already being a past event.

Tense Notes:

1. ～た間に is illogical because Action A would have then ended before the duration of Action B ever begins. You would be forcing an "after" statement on what should be a "while" statement.
2. There are cases where the non-past can be used with 間 which you will see later in this lesson.

～間: When to Use ～かん

This suffix is not that easy to use. It depends largely on context and what time phrase you are attaching it to.

For seconds and minutes, you'll see that there is not much of a difference whether you use ～間 or not. However, because it does demonstrate a "duration of time" more explicitly, it is a bit more formal.

12. 5 秒 (間) 待って！
びょう
Wait five seconds!

normal 分 (間) 待って！

Wait five minutes!

14. 5時間待って！

Wait five hours!

15. ^{じゅっ・じっ} 十 週に間待って！

Wait ten weeks!

16. ^{ごかげつ} 5ヶ月(間)待って！

Wait five months!

17. 5年（間）待って！

Wait five years!

Things get a little more tricky when you deal with ～前に.

十秒前に ○ 十分前に ○ ^{とおかまえ} 十日前に ○ ^{じゅっかげつまえ} 十ヶ月前に ○ 十年前に ○

Only 週間 and 時間 can be used with ～前に. # 週待つ is usually unnatural. However, when 週 is used in the context of 1週目 (first week), you can say things such as 5週待って! or 6週前に始まった. 時間 is acceptable presumably because it is not the same thing as ～時. ～時 refers to "o' clock" while ～時間 refers to "hours". So, although # 時前に and # 時間前に are possible, they're not the same.

第72課: Absolute Time V: While II: うち & Others

In this lesson we will learn all about うち. うち is another word for "while," and it will be important for us to compare it with あいだ and other less common "while" phrases.

うち

うち can attach to verbs, adjectives, and nouns of state/condition (夜・留守^{るす}). However, it must **never** be used with the past tense. When used to mean "while", うち must be followed by a particle. So, "A + うち + Ø" is impossible despite that "A + 間 + Ø" is possible.

There is some interchangeability between ～間に and ～うちに. Due to the existence of ～ないうちに, there are three time variables in this lesson: A, B, and C. The basic interpretation of ～うちに is Time A ends after Time C takes place. "Time", here, replaces

normal

the words "state" and or "action" as either kind of word is plausible. In the case of ～ないうちに, Time C occurs before Time B ever begins.

To show what forms these patterns may take, look at the following table. Example words will be used to better show what these forms look like. Again, these two patterns can be used with verbs, adjectives, and nouns, but they all involve state of being or action.

	うちに	間に
Verb	するうちに しているうちに	する間に している間に していた間に
形容詞	すずしいうちに	すずしい間に
形容動詞	元気なうちに	元気な間に
Noun	留守のうちに	留守の間に

漢字 Note: うちに is usually spelled in ひらがな when used in a temporal sense, but it still may be spelled in 漢字 as 内に.

In either case, both ～うちに and ～間に involve a Time C realizing within the frame of Time A. However, for ～間に, Time C starts and ends anytime during Time A. ～うちに means that by the time Time A ends, Time C is realized. If not, there would be bad consequences. In either case, Time C doesn't start until Time A starts. For ～ないうちに, then, Time C is realized before Time B ever happens because Time B is unfavorable. Take for example Ex. 1.

1. 若い (うちに ○・間に X) 英語を勉強した方がいいよ。
It's best that you study English while you're young.

Grammar Note: ～た方がいい = It's best that (you)...

Clarification Note: Because 内 literally comes from indoors/within, you are literally saying that you're doing C in the time frame of A. So, you can't do C before A because it's within and not outside A.

若い間に itself is a possible phrase. You can do many things while you're young, but learning languages is something that becomes incredibly difficult by age 12 for most people. So, there is a suggestion in Ex. 1 that if you want to learn English, you better do so by the time Time A runs out. If this favorable condition is so intrinsic to the statement, you cannot replace ～うちに with ～間に.

2. スープがまだ熱い {うちに ○・間に X} 飲むのが好きです。

I like eating my soup while it's still hot.

Word Note: The Japanese use the verb “to drink” instead of “to eat” for soup.

3. 警察^{けいさつ}が来ないうちに、逃げる^にから、心配^{しんぱい}ないよ。(Casual)

I'll run away before the police come, so no worries.

In Ex. 3, the main point is escaping before the cops make it there (before Time B realizes). Because this is so important, you cannot use ～間に. In fact, ～ない間に is usually unnatural in general. However, when it is possible to imagine the end point of ○○ない, ～ない間に is possible.

4. 妻^{つま}が帰ってこない {うちに・間に}、部屋^{かた}を片づけました。

I cleaned up the room in the time my wife wasn't home yet.

Nuance Note: Using うちに would suggest not cleaning the room before your wife comes home would be bad.

5. 知らない {間に・うちに}、眠^{ねむ}ってしまっていた。

I was accidentally sleeping when I didn't know it.

Again, it is possible for 間に to not be followed by a particle, but this is not possible for うち. Using ～うちに with まで would be illogical because Time C ends before A does. まで below has the events be simultaneous to the end, which is possible with ～間に.

6. 家に帰るまでの間、雨につかまってしまった。

I was caught in the rain till I got home.

Grammar Note: Here, ～てしまった shows that you were *unfortunately/regretfully* caught in the rain.

Now it is time to delve more into how they are different.

Using "While" with No Time Line

Both ～間に and ～うちに may be used with verbs like 行く and 帰る despite the fact that they have no timeline as they're instantial verbs. The reason for this is there is one implied via the route needed to do the actions. After all, they are motion verbs. So, instead of 帰っているうちに, you say 帰るうちに. This does not mean, though, using ～うちに and ～間に here interchangeably result in the same meaning.

normal

7. 家へ帰る間に、傘^{かさ}を忘れてきたのに気づいた。

While going home, I noticed that I had come without my umbrella.

8. 家へ帰るうちに、傘を忘れてきたのに気づいた。

Before getting home, I noticed that I had come without my umbrella.

漢字 Note: 気づく may be written in 漢字 as 気付く, but this is not that common anymore.

Grammar Note: ～の nominalizes the verb expressions preceding it. 気づく can also be 気がつく.

Non-Past: ～間に ○ but ～うちに X

Before we talk about what happens when you use ～ている with these patterns, let's look into restrictions involving the non-past tense, which is a form you will less likely encounter. If *even after the realization of Time C there is the potential that Time A continues for a long time or indefinitely*, you **can use ～間に** because its Time C just has to occur within Time A begins and ends. You **cannot use ～うちに** because it implies that Time A will soon stop or stop once Time C is realized. Otherwise, there would not be the added nuance of consequences if things don't go as planned.

9a. 彼氏^{かれし}が晩ご飯^{はん したく}の支度^{しやく}をする間に、宿題^{ぜんぶす}を全部済ませてしまった。○

9b. 彼氏が晩ご飯の支度をするうちに、宿題を全部済ませてしまった。X
I finished all of my homework while my boyfriend prepared dinner.

Grammar Note: Here, ～てしまった indicates the full completion of an action.

Non-Past: ～間に X but ～うちに ○

However, if there is the potential that Time A stops *due to* Time C realizing, you can use ～うちに because Time C realizes before Time A ends, but you cannot use ～間に. This is because although the time frame for ～間に is broad and wide so long Time A keeps on going, you cannot use it if Time A ends abruptly due to Time C as Time A doesn't come to a proper close. For instance, say you're drinking and intended for the event to start and end at some point. We'll call this Time A. During Time A, though, you get really red and then you redden once more later on, but this time, Time C, it's serious to the point you have to stop your drinking Time A. This is when you can't use ～間に and have to use ～うちに.

10. 酒をぐくぐくと飲む {○ うちに・X 間に}、また顔が真っ赤になってた。(Casual)

My face got completely red again while I was gulping down sake/liquor/alcohol.

normal

Non-Past: ～間に ○ & ～うちに ○

Conversely and almost contrary to what has been said in the last two sections, if Time C realizes and there is both the potential that Time A continues on later or that Time A is suspended, you can use either or. When you use ～間に, though, you imply that Time A didn't just end there because of Time C realizing. Or, if you do stop Time A, you can still go back to it later. This note of interchangeability refers to simply replacing one for the other and getting a correct sentence because the context could go either way depending on what you use. So, if you used ～うちに, it would sound like Time A got suspended because of the realization of Time C. Thus, the nuances of the two apply whenever they show up.

11. 暖かい {うちに・間に}、ちょっと散歩^{さんぽ}に出かけます。

I'll go out for a little walk while it's warm.

12. 駅へ行く {うちに・間に}、家に傘^{かさ}を忘れてきたのに気がついた。

While I was going to the train station, I realized that I had left my umbrella at home.

13. その新聞は、夜の {うちに・間に}、配^{くば}られてくるんですね。

That's because the newspaper is delivered during the night.

Grammar Note: 配られる is the passive form of 配る (to deliver/distribute).

～ている + ～間に・うちに

So, what's the difference when you use ～ている and just the non-past tense for both these patterns? In the case of ～ている, the time line involving Time A and Time C is quite long. So, there is ample time for Time C to end before Time A, allowing ～うちに to be grammatical in situations it wouldn't be with the non-past due to high probability that Time C wouldn't be able to end in time before the conclusion of Time A.

14. 赤ちゃんが寝てる {うちに・間に}、新聞読むよ。(Casual)

I'll read the newspaper while the baby is sleeping.

15. 彼氏が晩ご飯の支度をして {いるうちに・いる間に}、宿題を全部済ませてしまった。
I finished all of my homework while my boyfriend was preparing dinner.
-

More on ～ないうちに

First, consider the following examples.

normal

16. {まだ覚えている・忘れない} うちに宿題をします。
I'll do my homework {while I remember/before I forget}.

17. {涼^{すず}しい・暑^{あつ}くならない} うちに、夏休みの宿題をしてしまいました。
I completed all of my summer break homework {while it was cool/before it got hot}.

18. {明る^あい・暗^くくならない} うちに帰^{かえ}りなさい。(Stern)
Come home {while it's light/before it gets dark}.

As said earlier, ～ないうちに shows that Time C is realized before Time B realizes. You can reword these sentences by replacing ～ないうちに with ～間に. ～ないうちに can be used to paraphrase ～間に phrases so long as there is a complete opposite of Time A or a possible Time B and that Time B, if it does occur, happens after Time C is done. So, if it gets dark, that's OK so long as you get home in time. Thus, we can also say that Time B may happen after Time A (when the sun goes away) as long Time C happens beforehand. It's important to note, though, that ～ないうちに inherently implies a misfortune if things don't go as planned, which is not the case at all with ～間に.

～ないうちに can be the only correct version of a sentence. For instance, in Exs. 19 and 20, see how the opposite isn't possible with either うち or 間. Shots are preventative, so it's logical that ～ないうちに makes sense.

19. 病^{やま}気にならないうちに、^{よぼうちゅうしゃ}予防注射^{しやうしや}をしておいた方がいいですよ。○
It's best that you get immunizations in advance before you get ill.

20. 丈夫^{じょうぶ}な {うち・間} に、^{よぼうちゅうしゃ}予防注射^{しやうしや}をしておいた方がいいですよ。X
It's best that you get immunizations in advance while you're sturdy.

Grammar Note: ～ておく = To do in advance.

21. 蚊^かが {○ 入^いらない・X 出^でている} うちに、蚊帳^{かや}を吊^つった。
I hung up the mosquito net {○ before/X while} the mosquitoes got in.

漢字 Note: 吊 is not a common character, so don't worry about remembering it now.

Remember, when you can visualize a beginning and end point, ～ない間に can be used, but all of the facts leading up to now hold.

21. 誰^{だれ}もいない {うちに・間に} 、机^{かたづ}を片付けた。
While there was no one, I fixed up the desks.

～ないうちに VS ～まえに

Although their translations may have you think they are the same, they're not. Remember that in "Bない+うちに+C", C is a positive situation, and the realization of B is feared. This is not implied in ～まえに. Rather, in this case, B hasn't realized yet, but its potential to is right in front of one's eyes.

22. 走ったが、家に {着かないうちに・着くまえに}、雨につかまった。
I ran, but I got hit by the rain before I got home.

23. 妻が {起きないうちに・起きるまえに}、家を出た。
I left the house before my wife woke up.

24. 雨が降^ふ {る前に・らないうちに}、帰りましょう。
Let's go home before it rains.

Grammar Note: ～ましょう attaches to the ^{れんようけい}連用形 of a verb to make the polite volitional (let's) form.

～すきに & ～まに？

If you were to come across these expressions, you would find them very similar to ～うちに. However, there are important differences.

～ {る・ない・た} すきに shows that one does what one wishes to do during an opportunity that opens up (from the negligence of someone).

～まに is used to show that one does something when a chance arises and the time until that chance is lost. Thus, it has interchangeability with ～あいだに. It just has the added sense of taking advantage.

25. 先生のいない {うち・あいだ・ま・すき} に、すばやくホワイトボードを消してしまった。
I erased the white board quickly while the teacher wasn't there.

26. 今だ！こっちを見ない {○うち・○すき・Xま・X間} に、逃げて！
Now! Run away while they don't look here!

27. 夜 {が・の} 涼しい {○うち・○間・Xま・Xすき} に、部屋をきれいにした。
I cleaned my room while the night was cool.

漢字 Note: This すき can be written as 隙.

normal

～間（は） & ～うちは

X+あいだは+Z
X+うちは+Z

Z shows a line of time, and with the contrasting は, a **contrasting situation** to X is either explicitly stated or hinted at. Although you can use ～間 whether there is a contrasting situation or not, in order to use ～うちは, there has to be a contrasting situation.

28. 彼氏が晩ご飯の支度する {あいだ（は）・うちは}、宿題をしていた。

I was doing my homework while my boyfriend was preparing homework (but not at other times).

29a. 授業のあいだ（は）、ずっと^{いねむ}居眠りしていた。○

29b. 授業のうちは、ずっと居眠りしていた。X

I napped all through class.

30. コーヒーって若いうちはあまり飲まないほうがいいんですか。

Is it best to not drink a lot of coffee while you're young?

～うちが

Although any instance of this can be rephrased to avoid it, it shouldn't surprise you that this is possible given that うち is a noun. In this case all this is showing is "within A".

31. 何といっても、若いうちが花だよ。

No matter what they say, youth is the flower of life.

32. お酒は、ほろ酔い^よの^{さいこう}うちが最高だと言われる。

It's said that alcohol is the best while tipsy.

Grammar Note: 言われる is the passive form of 言う and is translated as "it's said".

Other Meanings of うち

Aside from meaning "while", うち has other usages. All these meanings can be written as 内, but this is only the case today when used in a spacial sense.

normal doors; interior; middle

2. One's home, family, spouse, in-group
 3. In an abstractly established perimeter.
 4. First person pronoun most often used by women.
-

Examples

33. うちの車や。（関西弁; feminine)
It's my car.

34. 百人^{ひゃくにんのこ}残ったうちの一人^{はんにな}が犯人だぞ。（Masculine; vulgar)
One of these remaining 100 people is the criminal!

35. あのドアは内^むに向かって 開^{あ・ひら}きます。
That door over there opens inward.

36. また、近いうちに。
Let's meet again soon.

37. 内側^{うちがわ}から鍵^{かぎ}がかかってしまった。
It was locked from the inside.

Grammar Note: ～てしまう = To accidentally do something.

38. 運^{うん}も実^{じつりょく}力のうちである。
Luck is also in one's true ability.

第73課: Time Phrases + に

When temporal nouns can be used with に and why is a matter that boggles the best minds of Japanese grammarians. It turns out that a lot of this decision depends on the more specific properties of groups of similar words and quirks on an individual basis. As the student, you will need to learn about what is certain so that you know when this relation exists or not.

Getting a Sense of the Problem

In large part, many temporal nouns are not used with the particle に. For instance, just as you don't say "at yesterday", Japanese don't say きのうに. Why, then, are there sentences like the following?

1. それを明日（に）することになっています。

normal has been decided that we will do that tomorrow.

2. 約束はいつにしましょうか。

When shall we carry out the appointment?

On the flip side, none of these sentences need に after the temporal nouns (which are in bold). Yet, as is the case with expressing a particular absolute point in time, に shows up obligatorily. So, if the context in which Ex. 1 was uttered were serious and particular, に would become obligatory. In reverse, if the contexts in which Ex. 2 was uttered were less serious and particular, に would become ungrammatical.

3. 私は8時に学校に行きます。

I will go to school at 8 o' clock.

4. どうぞお先に行ってください。

Please go before (me).

5. 彼は、今年2013年（に）亡くなりました。○

He died this year, 2013.

6a. 彼は今年に亡くなりました。X/○

6b. 彼は今年亡くなりました。○

He died this year.

Sentence Note: The grammaticality of 6a is based on whether there is context that would make 今年 more absolute. If the preceding sentence were say a question such as 「彼はいつ亡くなられたのですか」, it would become grammatical to say it.

Just from a few examples, you may already be getting a sense at when に shows up. But, we still have to think of more definitive ways to explain all of this.

Non-temporal Usages of に

The easiest usages of に that really aren't sources of any confusion is when rather than being part of a time phrase, に is a predicate phrase for some other reason.

7. 以前にもまして、彼女の韓国語は上達している。

Her Korean is improving more than before.

8. 昨日に引き続き今日は暑苦しい。

Today is sultry continuing from yesterday.

9. 明日にかけて広い範囲で曇るでしょう。

normal

It will be cloudy in a large area into tomorrow.

10. 仕事を来年に持ち越さないほうがいい。
It's best not to prolong work to the next year.

11. あさってにしよう。
Let's do it the day after tomorrow.

12. 今日になってやっと愛犬と再会した！
After all this time, I finally united today with my beloved dog!

13. 明日に控えた最後の集会
Last assembly postponed to tomorrow

14. きノウ今日に始まったことではない。(Set Phrase)
This is not a first.

15. 夜になっても、寝ないで。
Don't even sleep at night.

にでも, にも, and には are also significantly different and are not in the scope of the problem of this lesson. However, example sentences will be given.

16. 明日にでも仕事を辞めたい。
I'd like to quit my job even tomorrow.

17. 明日にもプレゼントが届きますよ。
The present will be delivered possibly even tomorrow.

18. 奇跡の賜物は今日にも当てはまるのですか。
Do miraculous gifts apply to today's world?

19. 明日には明日の風が吹く。
Tomorrow's wind will blow tomorrow.

Absolute, Relative, Intermediate, Referential

First we need to take a bird's eye view on the characteristics of temporal nouns.

Representative temporal nouns that do not take に for time include 今日, 明日, and 昨日.

normal

This is typically explained by their relativity to now. These nouns have a range of time associated with them, and there is no specific point in time like 4:56 being expressed. They can be used with things like 〜じゅう (throughout) and 〜のあいだ, but they can't be used with something like 〜ごろ.

20. 今日中に準備が出来ているはず。
きょうじゅう じゅんび

Preparations should be finished during today.

21. 明日中にやります。
あしたじゅう

I will do it by (the end of) tomorrow.

Representative temporal nouns that do take に for time include 〜時, 〜日, and 〜月 phrases. These are most indicative of absolute time expressions. They consequently can't be used with 〜中 〜のあいだ. They do, however, work with 頃.

22. 何時ごろに寝るの？

At what time do you go to sleep?

23. 8時30分ごろに電話をください。

Please call around 8:30.

24. 7月11日ごろに梅雨明けした。
つ ゆ あ

The rainy season ended around June 11.

There are times when they aren't used with に, but as is shown below, this is the case when you are showing which point in time a phenomenon in its entirety occurs, which differs greatly from when **an** action/event is done. It can also be said that without に, the time phrase becomes more emphasized.

25. この調査船は、先月下旬にオーストラリアを出発して南極海で気候変動の観測に当たっていましたが、
ちょうさせん げいじゆん なんきょくかい きこうへんどう かんそく あ
24日、厚い氷に航路を阻まれ航行できなくなりました。
あつ こおり こうろ はば こうこう

The research vessel left Australia late last month and was heading for measuring climate change in the Antarctic Sea, but its course was obstructed by thick ice this month on the 24th, and it is now unable to pass through.

Of course, there are those that are in between absolute and relative time phrases —intermediates—that at times can be with に and at other times can't. Examples include the season words 春, 夏, 秋, and 冬. These can be used with 〜中, 〜の間, and 〜ごろ. So, when they act more like relative time phrases, you can expect them to not be with に.

normal けんた 健太は一年生の間だけ家から通学したが、二年になった春、寮に住むことになった。
けんた つうがく りょう

Kenta commuted to school from home only while he was a first year student, but the spring he became a second year student, he began living in the dorms.

27. わたしの最初の小説を昭和50年の夏に出版しました。

I published my first novel in the summer of Showa Year 50.

28. 去年の秋にバイトから首になった。

I got my job cut from my part time job last fall.

So, what are referential time phrases? As listed earlier, words like 翌日 are similar to words like 明日, these words are not rooted down in the present. Tomorrow is quite different than “the next day” in terms of usage.

29. 翌週会う約束をした。

I made an appointment to meet the next week.

30. 翌日に家に帰る。

To return home the next day.

31. ぼくは新しいケイタイを買って、その翌日^なに失くしちゃったんです。

I bought a new cell-phone and lost it the next day.

The Heart of the Problem

What we really want to know is if there is any relation between に and words like 今日, 明日, and 昨日. Consider 明日. Although it may be a relative time expression, it specifically refers to the day after “today.” This quality makes these relative time phrases behave like demonstratives. Because of this, though, they don't usually go together well with actual demonstratives unless if the statement is figurative in some way.

32a. この今日、わたしは学校に行きます。X

32b. 今日、わたしは学校に行きます。○

I will go to school today.

33. その明日を目指す。 (Figurative)

To shoot for that tomorrow.

34. 自分はその明日^{けいむしょ}刑務所へ行って．．． (Literary)

I went to the jail the next day...

35. それでは、彼は、その明日^{かち ちょうみん}の価値を町民に知らせてまわっているのではないか。(やや

normal

こふう
古風)

So then, is he not going about notifying the townspeople of the prices as of tomorrow?

36. この毎年 X

This every year X

The same cannot be said for words like 日 and 夜, which are used frequently with demonstratives. Though they may be relative, their position on a timeline is not nearly as fixed as the words above.

37. その夜、彼は胃癌^{いがん な}で亡くなりました。

That night, he died from stomach cancer.

38. あの日々を忘れないでください。

Do not forget about those days.

39. この年まで続く。

To continue into this year.

第74課: The Giving Verbs

Japanese has specific verbs that define the relationship between the giver and recipient. Their usages with て are so important and particularly difficult that they will be covered separately.

The 3 Personal Giving Verbs

The main verbs of giving are あげる, くれる, and もらう. They also have different forms.

Vulgar	Regular	Respectful
やる	あげる	差し上げる
	くれる	下さる
	もらう	いただく

Conjugation Note: The ^{れんようけい}連用形 of 下さる has a sound change of り → い with -ます.

あげる shows oneself giving something. It may also be used to show the giving of things by people in one's in-group to other (close) in-group members. This does not mean, though, that this should ever be used for when someone, even if they are in your in-group, gives something to you.

normal

1. 父は母に時計をあげました。私も母にプレゼントをあげました。
My father gave my mother a watch. I too gave my mother a present.

2a. 父は私にコンピューターゲームをあげました。X
2b. 父は私にコンピューターゲームをくれました。○
My dad gave me a computer game.

Definitions Note: あげる can also mean "to rise". Spelling depends on how it's used. やる may be a casual form of "to do", and it can also mean "to send; dispatch", "to kill", "to show (movie)", "to drink (alcohol)", "to suffer from", etc.

くれる means an outsider or a less close member gives something to the speaker or to a member of one's in-group. So, it is when someone gives something to either you or someone in your in group. It may also be used to describe either you or someone in your in-group doing something unpleasant to an opposing person. This is similar to "to let someone have...".

もらう and its variant means "to receive; get". It may also mean "to welcome someone/something into the family". いただく is always said when receiving food, especially at the beginning of a meal.

Particle Note: For "to give", に is used to mark the recipient while for "to receive", the giver is marked by に. For the latter, から may be used instead. から, unlike に, may also be used with "receive" aside from an actual person.

3. 私は彼にプレゼントをあげた。
I gave him a gift.

いっぱい
4. 一杯やらないか。
How about a drink?

しば
5. 芝に水をやる。
To water the lawn.

かとう むすこ
6. 加藤さんは、息子に犬をプレゼントしてあげました。
Mr. Kato gave a dog to his son as a present.

しゃちょう しょうかいじょう
7. 社長さんは私に紹介状を下さいました。
The company president gave me a letter of introduction.

8. 犬に肉をやった。
I gave meat to the/a dog.

normal

9. 娘はお客さまに花束を差し上げました。
My daughter gave a bouquet to the guests.

10. やるせない
Helpless/miserable

11. アイディアをもらう。
To borrow an idea.

12. この勝負は我々がもらった。
We took this match.

Impersonal Giving Verbs

There are other verbs in Japanese that mean "to give" but are not at a personal level. **受ける** is used in several situations for things received "outside of favor", and **与える** is generally used with things given "outside of a personal level".

受ける (Receive)	与える (Give)
Figurative, with things such as a ball or event.	Used in respect to animals.
Used with things such as a job, education, etc.	Used when granting things.
"To take/receive" an exam; often 受験する	Used with prizes.
Used with bringing harm.	

Word Note: 受ける may also be 受け止める. It is used in the sense of "to take" as in "to take the news", "to take the events badly", etc.

13. 彼は深刻に受け止めたね。
He took it seriously, didn't he?

14. 有名高校を目指して難関の試験を受けた。
I took a highly competitive exam aiming for the prestigious high school.

15. 彼は首に軽傷を受けた。
He received a smaller injury on the neck.

16. 判決を受ける。
To receive a sentence.

17. 貧^{まず}しい人々に与える。
Give to the poor.

18. 台風^{たいふう}が与^{そんが}えた損害が多い。
There is a lot of damage caused (given) by the typhoon.

19. 許可^{きょか}を与えます。
I will give permission.

20. いい成績^{せいせき}を与えた。
I gave (him) a good grade.

21. 健康診断^{けんこうしんだん}を受ける。
To have health checks.

第75課: ～て（も） いい: Permission

This lesson will be about ～て（も） いい. This is an essential part of many sentences for asking and giving permission to someone to do something.

～ていい

～て(も)いい is used to ask for permission. As speech level changes this phrase, this is a good time to review these processes. Remember that も makes the sentence more indirect, thus making it more polite. The particle adds the meaning of "even if I".

Plain	て（も） いい	Polite	て（も） いいですか	Very Polite	てもいいでしょう うか
Formal	てもよろしいで すか	Very Formal	てもよろしいでし うか		

The addition of the particle も emphasizes the sense of "if you do X, that's OK", and it is often used to give a softening effect. This is why it is usually seen when asking questions as to be more polite.

Examples

1. お母^{かあ}ちゃん！ 今夜映画^{こんやえいが}を観^みていい？

normal

Mom! Can I see a movie tonight?

2. すみません、タバコを吸ってもいいですか。

Excuse me, is it alright if I smoke?

3. あのう、お隣に座ってもよろしいですか。

Mm, is it fine for me to sit by you?

4. ^{はこ}箱を開けてよろしいですか。

May I open the box?

5. ^{ぜんぶ}たくさんありますから、^{こうせい}全部を校正しなくてもいいです。

Because there is a lot of them, it's OK if you don't proofread them all.

6. ^{はい}入ってよろしいでしょうか。

May I come in?

7. ^{くろだ}黒田社長、^{わたし}私達は^{すわ}こちらに座ってもよろしいですか。

President Kuroda, may we sit down here?

8. ^{すわ}彼はこちらに座ってもよろしいでしょうか。

May he sit down here?

9. ^{しゃちょう}社長、この本をお^か借りしてもよろしいでしょうか。(Humble Speech)

President, may I borrow this book?

10. こちらにご記入をいただいてよろしいですか。

May I have you fill this out here?

Sentence Note: In honorifics, it is important to lessen the effect of pushing a request on someone. So, ~てよろしい is seen here asking for permission to make a request to the listener.

許可 Not 依頼

～ていい asks for permission, not request. In any case, the listener could still say no. If you were to use ～ていい with 借りる (to borrow), the listener is the person you're seeking permission to borrow. The listener is not the person lending you the money (貸す人ではない!). We can surmise that the only people that would say something like お金を貸してくだ

^{さい}
normal

are bank deposit salesmen or loan sharks, but friends wouldn't use it among each

other.

11a. 先生に○を習ってもいいですか？ X

11b. 先生、○を教えてくださいませんか。○

Sensei, may you teach me ○?

12a. 10万円を借りてもよろしいですか。 X

12b. 10万円を貸していただけませんか。○

Could I please have you lend me 100 thousand yen?

13. 友達から借りてもいいですか。

Is it alright if I borrow from a friend?

14. 細かいのがないので、ちょっと10円 {借りてもいい X・貸してくれない} ?

I don't have small change, so could I borrow 10 yen?

Sentence Note: In Ex. 14, the difference between the English "borrow" and Japanese 借りる is apparent. Asking to borrow something from the listener always involves the verb 貸す instead.

～て結構

Another equivalent phrase ～[て・で]^{けっこう}結構. It shows that something is fine but may not be entirely satisfactory.

15. どれでも結構だ。

Anything's fine.

Particle Note: As you should know by now で+も results in the particle でも.

第76課: The Particles が & けれど

These are perhaps the most used conjunctions in Japanese.

The Conjunctive Particle が

The conjunctive particle が may give the **premise** of a conversation or indicate a contradiction. The two clauses of the sentence should be the same in politeness.

1. 目が赤いが、どうしたの。(Casual)

Your eyes are red...what's the matter?

normal

2. テレビで聞いたが。
I heard it on TV, but...
3. 高いが、質は悪い。
It's expensive, but the quality is bad.
4. ちょっとすみませんが、案内所はどこですか。
Excuse me one moment, but where is the information center?
5. すみませんが、塩を取っていただけませんか。
Excuse me, but could you pass me the salt?
6. 安いことは安いが、質が悪い。
A cheap thing is cheap, but the quality is bad.
7. 寒いんですが、掛け布団をもう一枚かしてくださいませんか。
Since it is cold, could you lend me another quilt?
8. すみませんが、私の質問に教えてくださいませんか。
I'm sorry, but could you please answer to my questions?
9. 質はいいが、値段も高い。
The quality is good, but the price is high.
10. 映画を見たが、面白かった。
I watched a movie, and it was interesting.
11. 「日本語のコースでは、漢字をいくつか習いますか」「いくつ習うか分かりませんが、もう漢字が読めますから、私は気にしません」
“How many Kanji do you learn in the Japanese course?” “I don't know how many you learn, but since I can already read Kanji, I don't care”.
12. 本を読んだが、つまらなかった。
I read it, and it was dull.
13. 札幌へは行きますが、函館へは行きません。
I'll go to Sapporo, but I won't go to Hakodate.
14. 負けるに負けたが、悲しくない。
I/we indeed lost, but I'm not sad.

15. 聞くには聞いたが、まだよく聞こえない。
I've listened to it and listened, but I still can't hear it well.

16. 高田くんは頭がいいが、冷たい人だ。
Takata is smart, but he's a cold person.

Sentence Note: As is, this sentence is rather harsh. To critique someone less harshly in Japanese, you should mention the bad quality first and then say something positive.

17. ^{はな}鼻が高いが、においができない。
His nose is long, but he can't smell.

Word Choice Note: 高い is "long" for human noses; long for other noses like elephants' is 長い.

漢字 Note: The 漢字 spelling for におい in this situation is 匂い, which is very common.

18. ちょっと^{ねが}お願いがあるんですが。
I have a little request.

Usage Note: This sentence shows how んですが can be used to introduce a topic politely, and it's followed by something that needs permission, whether it be a request or invitation. As this sentence shows, what follows が doesn't always have to be mentioned. Something that could have followed it here would be いいでしょうか. け（れ）ど could have been used instead of が.

The Conjunctive Particle けれど

けれど, more polite as けれども and casual as けど, means "although/but", similarly to が. It may also be used to mean "but" at the end of a sentence, but it may also just soften a statement to be more polite and indirect. Even as a conjunctive particle, it may just simply connect phrases without a sense of contrast.

18. 彼は若いけれど、考えのしっかりした人です。
Although he's young, he's a sound thinking person.

19. 漢字は書けないけれど、読むことはできます。
Although I can't write Kanji, I can read them.

20. ちょっとテレビがうるさくて勉強できないんだけど、音を小さくしてくれない？
(Casual)

The TV is a little loud and I can't study, so could you turn it down?

normal

21. 益田ですけれども。
This is Masuda.
22. もうすこし日本語がよく分かれるといいのだけれども。
But it would be nice if I understood Japanese a little bit better.
23. 登山に行きたいんですけど、どこかいいところありませんか。
I want to go mountain climbing. Could you tell me of any good places?
24. この地方は寒くないと聞いたけれども、本当に毎日冷え込みますよ。
Although I heard that it wasn't cold in this region, it actually gets chilly every day.
25. それは立派だけれど、そうになっていない。
That's great, but it's not turning out as such.
26. 返事するにはするけど、もうちょっと待ってね。(Soft; probably a female speaker)
I'll give you the answer, certainly, but could you wait a minute?
27. そうすっけど、本当にだいじょうぶ？
I'll do so, but is it really OK?

Contraction Note: すっけど = するけど. る → っ is common in really casual speech in situations like this where it is before a consonant like k. Thus, するから may be seen as すっから.

Variant Note: けれども is a slightly old and somewhat dialectical variant.

Phrase Note: こう言うてはなんだ {が・けど} is a vague way of saying that one might be saying too much.

第77課: 語尾 I: よ & ね

語尾 are fundamental to Japanese. In a broad sense, they're any ending at the end of a sentence, but we'll use 語尾 interchangeably with 終助詞 (final particles). The two most important ones are よ and ね. At their most basic understanding, よ emphasizing emotion, judgment, or assertion, and ね seeks agreement and/or a response from the addressee(s).

These particles are best understood in regards to intonation and role of necessity. So, this lesson will first see why we sometimes have to use them and discuss what the actual uses are based on intonation.

よ & ね

自然さ

よ is perhaps less important than ね because its absence does not cause a sentence to sound unnatural as often. As (over)use can sound rude to superiors, its use is not often positively taught. When you use よ, you are presenting something that the listener is supposed to then recognize. For instance, sentences like 「はい分かりましたよ」 and 「私がやりますよ」 can easily be interpreted as complaining, especially the first one, and at the very least, you could be showing frustration. You are telling the person that he should know that you already know.

Of course, there are cases in which よ's absence is natural or unnatural. For instance, if you are telling something to someone that is beneficial to that person, the use of よ is natural. However, one must always consider the status of the listener and one's tone of voice.

1. おせんべい、どうぞ。美味しいですよ。

Here are some rice crackers. They're delicious.

2. もう、帰っていいですよ。

You can go home already.

Not using よ in these two sentences would show a lack of consideration towards the listener.

Consider 「さあ、始めますよ」. The lack of よ doesn't really change the meaning, but if you were to ask Japanese people whether 「さあ、始めるよ」 or 「さあ、始める」 is natural, they would say the former. Here's another example.

3. 「授業、終わった？」 「うん、終わったよ」

"Has your class ended" "Yeah, it has"

The lack of よ here would be very unnatural.

Knowing how to use 語尾 is exceptionally hard if we were to only look at polite speech. Dialectical variation also makes them very difficult to acquire correctly. As 語尾 are essential to proper conversation, however, at any given level regardless of their frequency in any given speech style, we will take the time in this lesson to look at よ and ね in depth.

Intonation

When you are trying to tell someone that a response is needed, you see a slight rise in intonation in よ. It is important to note that よ never actually has an intonation ↑. Even when someone is shouting, their pitch is going in a direction more similar to ↗ because the vowel gets lengthened. This is one reason why this particle is allowed in many speech styles.

4. 髪かみに何かついてますよ。↗
Something's stuck in your hair.

5. それ、超ちょう辛いよ。↗
That's gonna be hot (spicy).

Giving new information in this way implies that the listener doesn't already know. So, you must always balance sounding pushy with being helpful. Of course, one's relation to the person must be taken into account for familiarity is a factor to the use of よ. Always know your audience, and realize that these usages are controlled by your control of tone.

Sometimes this intonation is in fact used simply to show familiarity and closeness to someone. This clearly shows how よ is not just the equivalent of a verbal exclamation point.

6. 本を持ってきてくれた？
うん、持ってきたよ。↗
Did you bring the book for me?
Yeah, I brought it.

A lowering ∨ in pitch can do one of four things.

1. Criticize ignorance.
2. Show some sort of strong emotion like surprise, disappointment or deep impression.
3. Tell one's emotional state with exclamation.
4. Expressing one's intent.

Usage Note: These usages can easily be seen directed at oneself in ひとり言ひとごと.

7. 今日つかは疲れてるから、まっすぐ帰るよ。∨
I'm tired today, so I'm going straight home.

8. がんばれよ。∨
Come on. (Somewhat disappointed tone)

9. リーさんが手て伝つってくれたおかげで、早く終わったよ。∨

normal Thanks to Lee-san helping, I got finished early.

10. やっぱりその本が見つからなかったよ。↘
I unsurprisingly didn't find the book.

If you want to add a kiddish nuance to things, you can alter this intonation to ↑↓, which means elongation of the particle. You could see this spelled as よう or よー. The latter spelling is more colloquial. Whether it is kiddish or not depends on context, but it certainly adds emotional appeal.

11. 曇ってるから、何にも見えないよう。↑↓
Ahhh, we can't see anything because it's cloudy....
12. あいつがまたメールしたよ（う）。↑↓
That guy's sent another e-mail.....

ね

When saying something which is deemed to be mutually understood, ね's intonation goes up like ↑. This may also be used in response to an inquiry as well as for rejection.

13. ^{あつ}暑いね。↑
It's hot, huh.
14. 今日は人がよくいらっしゃいましたね。↑
A lot of people came today, haven't they.
15. そうだね！↑
Yeah, that's true!
16. 日本は今、何時？
ええと、昼2時くらいだね。↑
What time is it now in Japan?
Uh, it's about 2 in the afternoon.

17. ^{たの}なんとか頼むよ。↘
嫌だね。↑
I need your help somehow.
Ah, I don't wanna.

When used to seek confirmation or approval, ね's intonation is ↗.

18. これが納豆だね。↗
This is natto, right?

19. このペン、ちょっと借りるね。↗

Let me borrow this pen just a moment, k?

とうちゃくじかん
20. 到着時間は午後4時50分ですね。↗

The arrival time will be 4:50 PM, right?

The patterns ↘ and ↑↓ are very similar in meaning for ね。Going up and down in pitch doesn't make one sound more childish. Nor is the speaker seeking sympathy in either case.

Both patterns may be used to show collective recognition with an added sense of emotion. In this case, the listener is not expected to respond. It's possible to view such statements as being blurted out with not even much thought. This also applies to responding to inquiry. What is clear is that there is a heightened sense of emotion.

21. 着いたね。↑

着いたね。↘・↑↓

We've arrived.

None of these intonations particularly means that the train had any problem, but the last two would certainly make sense if there were a problem.

22. そうですねえ。↘

Yeah.....

This sentence shows some hesitation. This should make sense because a typical そうですね↑ is a response to having been sought agreement, but you're adding more emotional emphasis, which would in this situation equate to not being so on board.

Combinations

In compounds with the two at the end, the pitch goes down. The first combination below is わよ, which is simply a feminine form of the ↘ よ。よね, on the other hand, is a combination which has a little bit more complicated status. There are more examples, but we will stick to these two for now.

23. このケーキ、美味しいわよ。

This cake is delicious!

おか
24. 可笑しいよね。

That's so strange, no kidding?

～よね is relatively new. This combination particle has come about from a need to bring a normal to one's own opinion but see agreement/emotional appeal at the same. In contrast to a

typical そうですね, そうですね is used in anticipation of having people around you more involved. For those who think it is correct, they claim it shows more familiarity in colloquial speech and is used under the assumption that agreement is already had (共有認識^{きょうゆうにんしき}).

Using よ and ね with のだ

のだ's basic function is to get someone to understand something by bringing it to their attention. Adding ね has the tone seek sympathy as you try to have the listener understand things. Adding よ greatly emphasizes that you want to notify the listener of something. Repeating ~んだよ over and over again, though, can lead you to sound verbose. How exactly overuse leads to unnaturalness in this situation is not quite clear, but it is likely due to the functions of んだ and よ being redundant to the point you aren't actually using them to mean what they should, which leads to misuse.

25. 彼は銀行に勤めてるんだよね。(Not questioning)

He works in a bank, right?

26. 一体何があったんだよ？(Coarse; 男性語)

What the heck happened?

誤用

There are mistaken usages of よ and ね that even cause problems for native speakers. One of the best examples is when clerks try saying よろしいですよ to give permission but be cordial and respectful at the same time actually does the opposite and sounds rude. This stems from よ's use of marking criticism. It also has to deal with how よろしい can be used, too. Because superiors can use it to show recognition or permission to underlings, using it in this way would be arrogant.

26. 部長：「よろしい。私が考えよう」
ぶちょう

Alright. I'll think about it.

The replacement phrase for よろしいですよ would be はい、承知しました^{しょうち} or はい、分かりました.

More Usages & Examples

You may also see ね used as a filler word with a ㇿ intonation.

normal

27. あのね、^{ほく}僕、これがね、ほしいの。

Um, I, I really want this you see.

28. 明日はね、^{つごう}都合がいいんだ。

Um, tomorrow is going to be convenient.

When used after the て form to show a light, casual command with a ↑↓ intonation, ね can sound somewhat feminine. It may also be used by both men and women when speaking to children or when trying to be cute.

29. ここで待ってね。

Wait here, OK?

30. 知らないね。

I don't know.

Sentence Note: This is a response to inquiry, and the tone can be most light with a ↘ intonation.

かね is a combination that is *often* heard by old speakers and by speakers of certain dialects, though it is not limited to these speakers. It is also often treated as a gender neutral form of かな (I wonder).

31. 来てくれるかね。

Could you come over?

32. そんな手にだれが乗りますかね。

I wonder who would drive in such transportation.

33. 彼女に会いたいよ。↗

I want to see her!

34. 早くしないと^{おく}遅れますよ。↘ (Scolding)

You'll be late if you don't hurry.

35. 上司が^{じょうし}思いつきでものを言うからまいるよ。↗

My boss talks off the top of his head.

36. 泣かなくてもいいのよ。 (Feminine) ↗↘

It's OK not to cry.

Usage Note: Final particles, again, can be used as filler words at the end of dependent

normal

clauses to add emotion. This doesn't apply as much to よ, but it can happen. The usage of these particles like this is not proper in truly formal polite situations. You might hear your boss use particles like ね in this fashion, but you wouldn't talk that way to him. So, this, like anything in Japanese that is sensitive to situation, you should do some investigation before attempting.

Another use of よ is to call out for someone. We often see this in great pleas which we don't get to see in every day situations much but might in literature, dramas, etc.

37. 神よ、助けてくれ！
Oh God, save me!

蝶よ花よ & 月よ星よ

These phrases are used as adverbs followed by the particle と. Although literally "butterflies and flowers!" and "moon and stars!" respectively, they are used idiomatically to mean "bringing up like a princess" and "extremely loving and praising" respectively. The origin of these phrases is questionable, but that's not really important.

38. 娘を蝶よ花よと育てた。
I raised my daughter like a princess.

39. 月よ星よと眺める。
To gaze with great admiration.

第78課: 語尾 II: わ, な, と, の, さ, ぞ, ぜ, & え

ご び
語尾, as we have learned, are interjectory particles that show all sorts of **emotions**.

The Final Particle わ

わ is more **colloquial**--used in casual speech--than よ with gender restrictions based on tone. If **high**, it is associated with standard **feminine speech**. If low, it is associated with かんさいべん 関西弁 in which both men and women use it frequently. It may also list things with exclamation; this isn't necessarily feminine.

1. 本^{こま}当に困ったわ。
I'm really troubled.

すてき
2 圭あ、素敵だわ。
normal

Well, that's great.

3. 行くわよ。
I'm going!

Usage Note: ～わよ is **very feminine**. Extremely feminine and extremely masculine expressions are in somewhat of a decline in favor of more gender neutral ones. They are also not going to be used in polite speech.

4. バンが壊れるわ、^{こわ}乗上げるわ、^{さんざん}散々な一日だった。
The van broke, I got stranded, and I've had a day!

Particle Note: The sentence above is a great example of the usage of particles as filler words after clauses mentioned in the last section.

5. あとの事は何れ東京へ出たら、逢った上で話を付けらあ。
I'll talk about that once I've gone and met (with him).
From 門 by 夏目漱石.

Contraction Note: ～らあ is a contraction of ～るわ and is equivalent to ～るなあ in this context.

Historical Note: わ is an evolved form of は.

The Final Particle な

1. な is for the most part the masculine version of ね. However, females have begun to use it as well, particularly those that are seen as being stronger than the average woman. This should not be used in polite situations.

6. 俺^{おれ}な、今度^{こんど}な、勝つんだ。
I, uh, this time, will win.

7. あのな、こっちではな、酒はいけないんだ。(説教的な言い方)
Um, you mustn't drink sake here, you know.

8. 懐かしいなあ。
How nostalgic.

9. いやだな。
What a pain!

10. 君が来ないと、つまらないなあ。

normal

If you don't come, it'll be boring.

だれ
11. 誰か来たな。
Someone came, didn't they?

12. 罪人はお前だな。
The sinner is you, isn't it!

2. Placed after the ^{しゅうしけい}終止形 (the end form) of a verb to show a strong negative command.

13. そんなことをするな。
Don't do such a thing!

14. 行くな！
Don't go!

15. すんな！
Don't do it!

Contraction Note: ～るな is often contracted to ～んな. Even if a verb doesn't end in the sound, ん is often inserted before な. So, things 話すんな are becoming more common. Again, don't use these contractions in polite situations.

3. Used as a contraction of ～なさい,. Don't confuse this with Usage 2!

16. 行きな！
Go!


17. やってみな！
Try it!

18. ちょっとこっちに来な。
Come here for a moment.

The Final Particle と

There are three very different usages of the final particle と.

1. In a question with a high intonation, it presents a demanding question. This is used in casual or vulgar speech.

 In っと it is used to declare something with a light tone. It is used in plain speech.

3. とさ is used with polite endings in story-telling.

Examples

19. 何だと!? (Vulgar/casual)
WHAT!?

20. いやだと?
You say no!?

21. 知らねーっと。 (Vulgar; slang)
I don't know.

22. 二人で ^{しあわ}幸 ^くせに暮らしましたとさ。
And they lived happily ever after.

23. やめたいだと?
You want to quit!?

Grammar Note: だと is allowed here because it is acting as a final particle.

The Final Particle の

The final particle の is becoming more unisex in appeal, but guys should be careful with their tone of voice. As said earlier, it can show a decisiveness/confirmation, reasoning with a low pitch, and question with a high pitch. Patterns that are particularly feminine include (な) のよ, のね, and の!.

24. やりたくないの! (Feminine)
I don't want to do it!

25. 休みなのよ。 (Feminine)
It's a break!

26. 宿題 (を) 忘れたの?
You forgot your homework?

27. ああ、そうだったの。 (A little feminine)
Ah, is that so?

28. やはりだめだったのね。 (Feminine)
It was bad as expected, wasn't it?

normal

29. 明日来ないの。
You're not coming tomorrow?
30. 仕事があったんじゃないの？
Didn't you have work?
31. 強い男は泣かないの。
Strong guys don't cry.
32. おお、まことか、よく来たの。(Old person)
Oh, it's you Makoto; good of you to come.

Speech Style Note: The last sentence sounds like it came from an old person. よく来たな is a more masculine yet more common way to say it. よく来たね is more gender neutral. As you can see, it's different from the other sentences above.

The Final Particle さ

さは a signature feature of Tokyo speech and is the Japanese equivalent to the overuse of "like" in English. Don't use this in polite speech. This is very casual, and the usage is rather random based on region and age. The people most likely to use it are young people in and around the capital area (首都圏^{しゅとけん}) .

33. 東京は本当にきれいさ。
Tokyo is like really pretty.
34. 明日はさ、土曜だからさ、休みなんだ。
Tomorrow is, um, cause it's Saturday, we're going to be on break.
35. 何さ、あんなやつめ！
What the, that guy!

Grammar Note: さ is typically not placed after だ as the first example demonstrates. However, many speakers don't follow this.

The Particle ぞ

ぞ is very casual and at times harsh. ぞ, which is associated with masculine speech, creates a casual yet strong assertive emphasis. It may also be used to make a rhetorical question. Its role as being strongly masculine is in decline, but it is still used frequently, just not with as much of the gender baggage. You should not use this in polite speech.

36. 何か変だぞ。
Something's strange.

37. 今しないと、失敗するぞ。
If you don't do it now, you'll fail!

38. とにかく家へ帰るぞ。
Anyway, I'm going home.

39. 勉強しなかったから、テストに合格しなかったんだぞ。
It's because you didn't study that you didn't pass your test!

40a. あれは何者ぞ。 (Very old-fashioned)

40b. あいつは何者だ？ (More natural)
Who is that?

Phrasing Note: Using ぞ in making a rhetorical question is rather archaic.

The Final Particle ぜ

ぜ rudely and or forcefully pushes an idea. Due to this, it is only appropriate in casual conversation and should never be used with your superiors (in a typical situation). Only if you and your superior(s) are drunk should you ever use it; that is unless you're quitting.

ぜ has historically been extremely masculine, but it is now not completely out of the norm for female speakers to use it among themselves. This, though, may make them look unfeminine. Strong female bodybuilders can use ぜ just like a rough playing boy child in a schoolyard.

It is because of these reasons why experience in hearing them used is the best way to truly know the full realm of their usage.

41. 雪だぜ。
It's snow!

42. 行くぜ！
Let's go!

Origin Note: ぜ is the contraction of ぞえ.

The Final Particle え

normal

Although no longer common, え is used to either to call for someone or push an idea for questioning something. It's often in the pattern ぞえ. You might hear something with this in it in some old-fashioned drama.

43. 行くぞえ。

Let's go!

44. お上さん^{かみ}え (Old-fashioned)

Missus!

Spelling Note: ぞえ and ぞえ are both common spellings, and the pattern is still common among many speakers. It's just that using the particle in any other situation is very uncommon.

第79課: Start to: ~始める, ~出す, & ~かける

Compound verbs are created in Japanese by adding one verb to another verb's stem. Verbs that attach to others in this way are called supplementary verbs. However, not all verbs can be used in this way. The first ones that we will study concern “beginning”, which are ~始める, ~出す, and ~かける.

一だん	五だん	する	来る
食べる → 食べ	思う → 思い	する → し	来る → 来 (き)

~始める

The 一段^{いちだん} verb 始める means "to begin/start". It also means this in compound verbs. So, you can use it to create new verbs like the following.

書く + 始める = 書き始める	To begin writing
する + 始める = し始める	To begin doing
壊す + 始める = 壊し始める	To begin destroying
覚える + 始める = 覚え始める	To begin remembering

Remember that this verb is transitive. However, when it attaches to verbs, the transitivity of the verb expression is determined by the verb that it attaches to. So, it attaches to both intransitive and transitive verbs. So, when it's used as a stand-alone verb, you have the 始ま^マ normal and 始める contrast, but not in compound verbs.

1. 今日、レポートを書き始めました。
I started writing the report today.
2. 宿題を（し）始めた。
I started doing my homework.
3. 僕が日本語を勉強し始めたのは、6年前です。
It was six years ago since I started studying Japanese.
4. 疲れを感じ始めた。
I began to feel tired.
5. 来学期から日本語を勉強し始める。
I'll start studying Japanese from next semester.
6. 仕事を始める。
To start work.
7. 話を始めた。
I began a conversation.
8. 雪は冷たいみぞれに変わり始めた。
The snow started to turn into icy sleet.
9. 手がかじかみ始めました。
My hands began to feel numb.

漢字 Notes:

1. みぞれ can be written in 漢字 as 霰, but you are not responsible for this.
2. かじかむ can be written in 漢字 as 悴む, but you are not responsible for this.

～出す

First and foremost, 出す^だ is a transitive verb which means "to take out", and it may be used in an array of situations. Although not the main point of this section, here are some examples of how this verb is used as a stand-alone verb.

10. ゴミを出す。
To take out the trash.

normal

11. 強いにおいを出した。
It gave off a strong smell.

12. レポートを出す。
To submit a report.

13. 私はあの店で飲み物を出しています。
I serve drinks at that store.

14. 手紙を出す。
To mail a letter.

～出す is like ～始める in that they both describe the start of an action, circumstance, or change, but they are slightly different.

～始める is used generally in regards to the starting of an event, and it is used with verbs of volition, actions in which people have control of, in this sense. In the case that it shows a circumstance or change beginning, it is used with non-volitional/intransitive verbs. Even still, it *generally* states the beginning of something.

～出す attaches to verbs of volition/non-volition as well. Thus, although the main verb is transitive, the transitivity of the compound verb expression is decided by the verb that it attaches to. As for ～出す, it describes the sudden start of an action or circumstance. In this sense, it is far more emotionally emphatic.

To be clear on how this is attached to verbs, consider the following chart.

動く (To move)	+ 出す →	動き出す	叫ぶ (To shout)	+ 出す →	叫び出す
歩く (To walk)	+ 出す →	歩き出す	飛ぶ (To fly)	+ 出す →	飛び出す

15. 由美子ちゃんが泣き出した。
Yumiko broke into tears.

16. 彼女は笑い出した。
She started to laugh (big time).

17. 走り出した。
He began to dash.

18. 太陽が顔を出した。
The sun showed its face.

19. 雨が降り出した。
It began to rain (a lot).

Note: 見出す = みいだす (to find; pick out)

20. 面白い映画を見て、吹き出した。
Watching a funny movie, I burst out laughing.

21. 政府の姿勢に不満が噴き出した。
I was flushed with dissatisfaction at the government's stance.

Word Note: ふきだす is a word with two spellings and several meanings. It can show something spouting out with much force, which can be applied in a physical sense or in a more abstract sense like in Ex. 21. In Ex. 22, it has a meaning of “sprout out”. Just as in Ex. 20, it may be like 笑い出す. The verb is also sometimes used in a transitive sense.

22. 新芽が吹き出した。
The bud sprouted (out).

23. 桜島はいつも真っ白な火山灰を噴き出しますね。
Mt. Sakurajima always spouts out white volcanic ash.

Geography Note: 桜島 is an island next to 鹿児島, which is a major city on the southern tip of 九州, the southernmost major Japanese island. This island has an active volcano, 活火山 (also read more correctly as 桜島御岳), which is formally called 桜島御岳.

御 is an honorific prefix, and although it is usually read as お in this context, it is actually read with the older reading おん here. 岳 is an alternative character for certain mountains/volcanos as opposed to the more frequent 山. However, this active volcano is usually called 桜島, despite being the name of the island. If the ash was to finally stop and the volcano became dormant, it would be called as 休火山.

漢字 Note: Do not read 火山 as かさん. The change from さん to ざん is not because of sequential voicing. Instead, ざん is a later 音 reading that entered Japanese from Chinese. You see this reading in similar words like 氷山 (iceberg).

However, 灰 does get voiced due to sequential voicing, which is called 連濁. はい is not Chinese. The Chinese reading is かい. This reading is used in words like 灰白色 (grayish white).

normal

Prefix Note: 真っ白 is “pure/snow-white”. When you attach 真っ to other colors, be careful of sound changes! 真っ青 = まっさお; 真っ赤 = まっか; 真っ黒 = まっくろ. Note that 真っ白 is possible for many speakers, but it is not 100% proper Japanese.

24. 葡萄の木が芽を吹き出す。

25. ぶどうの芽が吹き出す。

The grape tree's shoots will sprout.

Transitivity Note: This pair of sentences shows flexibility in transitivity. However, it is important to note that the latter is more frequently used as it is shorter. This does not, though, make the former incorrect.

漢字 Notes:

1. Many things have 漢字. Although ぶどう is typically not written as 葡萄, it's important for you to get the feel of what does have a 漢字 spelling, even if it's not provided to you.

2. 噴き出す may not be used in the plant sense of “to sprout”. 噴, pronounced as ふん in compounds, has the meaning of “erupt”. Thus, 火山の噴火 means “volcano eruption”.

Another peculiar difference is that ～始める but not ～出す may be used with phrases like ～てください (please...). Even with, ～てもいい (all right to...), ～出す is often unnatural.

26. 食べ始めてください。○

食べ出してください。×

Please start to eat.

27. 食べ出してもいいですか。△

食べ始めてもいいですか。○

Is it alright if I start eating?

～かける

～かける also marks the starting of an action or circumstance. The exact nuances that it could have are all over the place to the point that it's best to take each case individually and find out what it means. This may sound like a very difficult task to do, but there are a few commonalities across the combinations that you can use to understand this ending better. 1. you already know that it can deal with something starting. Thus, it may show something being *on the verge of* whatever. 2. this “on the verge” meaning is very similar to doing something midway/halfway. As a nominal phrase in the form of ～かけ in describing things half-done.

In the example sentences below, Examples 28~30 should be straight-forward. The last two involve more thinking, and the latter example will require some more information about the verb かける itself to make sense.

28. 何かを言いかける。
To be on the verge of starting to say something.

29. 彼女は二度と死にかけた。
She almost died twice.

30. 夜が明けかけている。
The day is breaking.

31. 見知らぬ人に話しかけてはいけない。
Don't talk to strangers!

32. 彼の顔に ^{けむり}煙をぷっと吹きかける。
To puff smoke into his face.

Sentence Note: 話しかける refers to the point in time when one tries to start a conversation. So, you're still on the verge of something. 吹きかける requires that you understand かける may also mean "to cover/put over". Even so, the verb is still somewhat figurative because 煙を吹く also exists with the meaning "to blow smoke", but this wouldn't be used in the context of Ex. 32.

~かかる

~かかる may also be used to mean "to begin," but it implied that one is on the verge of an end result. It may also be used to show that an action is being directed elsewhere. Either way, because this ending is not that productive, you will have to study how to use it on a case-by-case basis. Furthermore, you will also have to learn the transitivity of the resultant verb.

34. 死にかかる魚って見たことがあまりない。
I have seldom seen fish at the point of death.

35. ^{しんつう}心痛が重く伸しかかった。
Worries weighed heavily on her.

36. 何時から仕事に取りかかりますか。
When do you start work?

37. 旅行の準備^{じゅんび}をしかかる。
To begin preparations for the trip.

第80課: End: ~終わる・終える, ~やむ, & ~上がる・上げる

These endings will greatly aid in expanding your Japanese knowledge.

~終わる・終える

"To end" is either 終わる^お or 終える. The grammar is a bit confusing. Originally, 終わる was strictly intransitive and 終える was transitive. Remember, intransitive verbs happen with no active agent but transitive verbs have a direct object.

Transitive verbs are used with を, but intransitive verbs are typically used with が. 終える may be used as a transitive verb, but it is **rare** as an intransitive verb. The chart below will show the three main patterns with these verbs.

Particle	Verb	Meaning
が	終わる	Event ends naturally
を	終わる	To not end intently
を	終える	To end intently

1. 授業^{じゅぎょう}が終わった。
Class ended.

Word Note: クラスが終わった is wrong because クラス, contrary to how it's used in English, is used in reference to the group/body of the class.

2. 道路^{どうろ}はここで終わっている。
The road ends here.

Tense Note: Notice the use of the progressive tense in the sentence above. ~ている is used to show a continuous action. The road has and will continue to end there unless if something happened. Therefore, the non-past tense would be incorrect.

3. 先生^{こうぎ}は講義を終えましたか。
Has the teacher concluded his lecture?

4. 生^{しっばい}敗に終わる。
normal

To end in failure.

5. 何時に終わりますか。

At what time will it end?

6. 何時に終わりますか。

At what time will (they) end it?

7. それはどのように終わりましたか。

How did it end up = How did it go?

8. その映画が死で終わる。

That movie ends in death.

9. 昨夜の演奏は歌って終わった。

Last night's performance ended with singing.

10. 試合は引き分けに終わった。
しあい

The game ended in a tie.

11. 動物の権利活動家らが抗議を終えましたが、反対の声をあげつづけるそうです。

The animal rights activists ending the protest, but they are to continue raising voices of opposition.

12. ぼくは試験が全部終わったよ。ぼくの人生も終わったかもしれない。

I'm finished with all of my exams! My life may have ended as well.

13. これで一生を終えるんだと思ってました。
いっしょう

I thought that I would end my life with this.

Word Note: There are several words for life. せいかつ 生活 for way of life, じんせい 人生 for "human

life", いのち 命 for the force that keeps us alive, and 一生 is one's "whole life".

14. 修理を終えましたか。
しゅうり

Did you finish the repairs?

15. 生涯が終わる。 = 死ぬ
しょうがい

To die.

Definition Note: This usage of the verb 終わる shows that one's life or role comes to an

end
normal

16. 生涯を終える。

To end one's life.

Nuance Note: This does not show intent. Otherwise, it would refer to suicide which it does not.

17. 宿題をおえたぞ。 (Masculine)

I finished my homework.

18. 会議^{かいぎ}を終わる。

To end a meeting (halfway).

19. 会議を終える。

To *end* a meeting.

20. 会議が終わる。

The meeting ends.

漢字 Note: 了 and 卒 (which signifies graduation) may also be used instead of 終, but they're uncommon.

～終わる・終える

In compounds ～終わる shows that an action ends or is completed. ～終わる is used with intransitive and transitive verbs, and it is the initial verb that decides the transitivity of the compound verb phrase.

When you see ～終わる with transitive verbs, it shows that the subject of the sentence has finished something naturally or unintentionally in the sense that there is not necessarily a motive or goal for completion. For instance, you may finish paying off your student loan to college eleven years out of the fact. If you wanted to say you finished paying off your loan, you would use Ex. 21.

～終える signifies that one **ends** an action, and it must only be used with verbs of volition. Also, ～終える is more frequently seen in the written language, no doubt because one's intent is more powerfully expressed with it.

These endings can't be with condition verbs like いる or できる. They can't attach to verbs of change or movement because there is no end point.

21. ローン^{はら}を払い終わりました。

finished paying off the loan.

normal

22. 宿題をし終えて、外へ遊びに行った。

I finished my homework and went outside to play.

23. 取引を終える。

To close (as in the stock market).

24. その本を読み終えましたか。

Did you finish reading that book?

25. 早くやり終える。

To get it over with.

26. 彼は歌い終わりました。

He finished singing.

27. 小説を書き終えた。

I ended writing the novel.

28. 彼が意見を言い終わるか終わらないうちに、あの人は邪魔をして口を挟んだ。

Before he could finish saying his opinion, that person interjected himself.

～やむ

止む means "to end/stop" and is intransitive. Its counterpart that is used for personal action is 止める. In compounds やむ is only used with verbs that occur naturally. For anything else, use やむ or やめる (the transitive form of "to stop") as independent verbs.

29. 雨が降り止んだ。

雨がやんだ。(More common)

It stopped raining.

30. 音楽が止まりました。

The music stopped.

31. なにかをやめることが必要かもしれません。

It might be necessary to quit/stop (doing) something.

To Quit Doing

"To quit/stop doing" is made with a nominalizer plus やめる. Change in habit itself is

normal

shown by the negative with "ようになる".

32. 彼は勉強するのをやめた。

He stopped studying.

33. 彼はタバコを吸^すわないようになった。

He stopped smoking.

34. 私はそれを表示できないようになってしまいました。

I ended up not being able to display it.

Meaning Note: ～てしまう = To end up

～上がる・上げる

上がる and 上げる are verbal pairs to express raising and lifting. Of course, there are many usages of these two words. 上がる is intransitive and 上げる is transitive. These broad meanings will make sense once you see how they are applied to actual compounds.

～上がる	～上げる
An action ends	To do exhaustively/to a limit
An action is completed	To do an action completely
	Adds a sense of humility
	To show an explicit wording

35. 彼女は歌い上げました。

She sang to the top of her voice.

36. 氏名を読み^{しめい}上げる。

To read out a name.

37. 何とぞよろしくお願^{ねが}い申し上^{もう}げます。

I kindly ask for you to remember me on my behalf.

38. 本をすっかり書き上げた。

I completely wrote up the book.

39. 全部数えあげ^{ぜんぶかぞ}たのか。(A little rough)

Did you count it all up?

40. 空が^は晴れ上がった。
The sky cleared up.

41. 焼きあがる。^や (Never transitive)
To finish burning.

42. いい食事が出来上がりました。
A great meal is ready.

43. 街中が^{まちなか}^{ふる}震え上がった。
The town shuddered.

第81課: Whenever: 毎~, ~毎に, & ~おきに

This lesson is about speech modals that describe repetition of circumstances. Though in some respects, there are striking commonalities among these expressions, pay very close attention to detail as all information in this lesson is relevant in further understanding Japanese time phrases.

Every~

Though English has the single word "every...", Japanese does not. Rather, there are 毎~ and ~毎に, but their combinations, exact readings, and exact nuances cause issues.

	朝	晩	夜	日	時間	週間	月間	年間
毎~	まいあ さ まい ちょう	まいばん	まい よ	まい にち	まいじ	まいしゅ う	まいげつ まいつき	まいね ん まいと し
~毎 に	あさご とに	ひとばん ごとに ゆうごと に	よご とに	1日ご とに ひご とに	(1)じかん ごとに	(1)しゅう ごとに	いっかげつ ごとに つきごとに	(1)ねん ごとに

Usage Notes:

1. You may also use these expressions with the words for the seasons. ~ごとに is on the decline in general, so you may not get chances to hear it very often. It also can be seen after verbs, but this has also declined in usage.

normal

	春	夏	秋	冬
毎～	まいはる まいしゅん (書き言葉)	まいなつ まいか (書き言葉; Rare)	まいあき まいしゅう (書き言葉)	まいふゆ まいとう (書き言葉; Rare)
～毎に	はるごとに	なつごとに	あきごとに	ふゆごとに

2. まいちょう is rare and very formal. It is more likely to be in writing.
3. ～毎に can also be translated as "X by X". So, 1時間ごとに = "hour by hour".
4. "Night after night" can be 夜^よな夜^よな. A similar expression is 朝^{あさ}な夕^{ゆう}な meaning "day and evening" in a repetitive sense. These phrases are not usually used in the spoken language.
5. "Month by month" can also be 月^{つき}々^{づき}.
6. 毎～ must never be used with non-temporal phrases.
7. 毎年 and 毎月 are usually read as まいとし and まいつき respectively.

Examples

1. 毎朝散歩に出かけます。
I go out on a walk every morning.
2. 毎時50キロメートルの速度^{そくど}
50 kilometers per hour
3. 母は毎朝散歩します。^{はは}
My mom walks every morning.
4. 毎日どこでご飯を食べますか。
Where do you eat every day?
5. 日本人とアメリカ人は毎日三回食事をするのが普通だ。^{まいにちさんかいしょくじ} ^{ふつう}
Japanese and Americans usually eat three times every day.

Practice:

1. Try making a sentence with ことあるごとに (With every little thing)
2. Translate ことあるごとに、彼を思い出すんだよ。

Using ～ごとに

～ごとに has several usages. Other than phrases such as ことあるごとに, it is hardly ever used after verbs. However, it is always very old-fashioned when after verbs to mean “whenever” (See ～度に below). There are four distinct situations that you may see ～ごとに used in.

1. For every constant A (place, point of time, or person), a repetition B occurs.
2. For every variable A (place/person), a different thing exists.
3. It shows that something takes place once every given amount of time.
4. As you repeat a certain constant A, a change progresses. (Rarely seen with verbs)

Examples

6. 祝日 {ごと・のたび} ^{しゅくじつ} に、家族みんなでドライブに出かけることにしてますよ。(話し言葉)

The whole family goes out on a drive {every/whenever there is a} holiday.

Speech Style Note: ～のたびに would make it more 話し言葉的.

7. その企業グループは、会社ごとに、それぞれの社是と社則があるから、よく注意してください。
^{きぎょう} ^{しゃぜ} ^{しゃそく}

As for that corporation group, every company has its own policies and rules. So, please pay close attention.

8. 一雨ごとに、もっと暖かくなる。

With each rain, it gets warmer.

9. ことあるごとに反対するのはだめだよ。
^{はんたい}

It's bad for you to be against with every little thing.

10. 四年ごとに閏年になって、オリンピックが開かれるということは常識だ。
^{うるうとし} ^{じょうしき}

It's common sense that every four years there is a leap year, and the Olympics are held.

Grammar Note: 開かれる is the passive form of the 五段 verb 開く.

漢字 Note: 閏 is not a 常用漢字. So, you aren't responsible for it at this time.

Every Time

For "every time", 毎度まいど, 毎回まいかい, 毎次まいじ, 度にたび, and 都度つど exist. The first two are different in that the former is stronger and seen in set phrases like 毎度ありがとうございます. For when you want to say you attend every time, you need to use 毎回 instead. 毎次 is quite formal and is used in the sense of "whenever" but is not used in the spoken language.

11. 六時間毎ごとに 薬くすり を服用ふくようしなくてははいけません。
You have to take medicine every 6 hours of time.

12. その都度しょうりょう使用料はらを払う。
I pay the usage fee each and every time.

13. 毎回さんか参加します。
I participate each time.

14. 毎次まいじ密接みっせつに連絡れんらくを取ります。
Each time I'll be in close touch.

15. やる度しばいに失敗する。
To fail whenever one tries.

16. 彼は週毎かせに 4 万円の稼かせぎがあります。
He has earnings of 40,000 yen a week.

Frequency Note: Although 月ごとに and 週ごとに are correct, they are typically replaced with 月に and 週に respectively.

関西弁 Note: 毎度大ききに is a very important phrase from 関西弁 meaning the same thing as 毎度ありがとうございます.

～おきに

With Time

～おきに is equivalent to "every other". Like all of these other expressions, something is repeated in a given interval. However, as you can see in the translation, it is not quite the same.

17. 2 日おきに = Every other two days VS 2 日ごとに = Every second day
●○○●○○●○○●... ●○○●○○●○○●...

18. 3日おきに = 4日ごとに Every other three days = every fourth day

●○○●○○●... ●○○●○○●...

19. 彼女は一日おきに出勤する。

She goes to work every other day

With Distance

For distance, ～ごとに shows precise repetition of distance. So, if you are lining bottles and place them 5メートルごとに, you start from the midpoint from one bottle and place the next bottle five meters from that point. If you place them 5メートルおきに, you are measuring the space in between each bottle, so you measure from the edges of each bottle.

20. 部屋は5分おきに揺れた。

The room shook every other five minutes.

第81課: Whenever: 毎～, ～毎に, & ～おきに

This lesson is about speech modals that describe repetition of circumstances. Though in some respects, there are striking commonalities among these expressions, pay very close attention to detail as all information in this lesson is relevant in further understanding Japanese time phrases.

Every～

Though English has the single word "every...", Japanese does not. Rather, there are 毎～ and ～毎に, but their combinations, exact readings, and exact nuances cause issues.

	朝	晩	夜	日	時間	週間	月間	年間
毎～	まいあ さ まい ちょう	まいばん	まい よ	まい にち	まいじ	まいしゅ う	まいげつ まいつき	まいね ん まいと し
～毎 に	あさご とに	ひとばん ごとに ゆうごと に	よご とに	1日ご とに ひご とに	(1)じかん ごとに	(1)しゅう ごとに	いっかげつ ごとに つきごとに	(1)ねん ごとに

Usage Notes:

1. You may also use these expressions with the words for the seasons. ～ごとに is on the decline in general, so you may not get chances to hear it very often. It also can be seen after verbs, but this has also declined in usage.

	春	夏	秋	冬
毎～	まいはる まいしゅん (書き言葉)	まいなつ まいか (書き言葉; Rare)	まいあき まいしゅう (書き言葉)	まいふゆ まいとう (書き言葉; Rare)
～毎に	はるごとに	なつごとに	あきごとに	ふゆごとに

2. まいちょう is rare and very formal. It is more likely to be in writing.
3. ～毎に can also be translated as "X by X". So, 1時間ごとに = "hour by hour".
4. "Night after night" can be 夜^よな夜^よな. A similar expression is 朝^{あさ}な夕^{ゆう}な meaning "day and evening" in a repetitive sense. These phrases are not usually used in the spoken language.
5. "Month by month" can also be 月^{つき}々^{づき}.
6. 毎～ must never be used with non-temporal phrases.
7. 毎年 and 毎月 are usually read as まいとし and まいつき respectively.

Examples

1. 毎朝散歩に出かけます。
I go out on a walk every morning.
2. 毎時50キロメートルの速度^{そくど}
50 kilometers per hour
3. 母は毎朝散歩します。^{はは}
My mom walks every morning.
4. 毎日どこでご飯を食べますか。
Where do you eat every day?
5. 日本人とアメリカ人は毎日三回食事をするのが普通だ。^{まいにちさんかいしょくじ} ^{ふつう}
Japanese and Americans usually eat three times every day.

normal

Practice:

1. Try making a sentence with ことあるごとに (With every little thing)
2. Translate ことあるごとに、彼を思い出すんだよ。

Using ～ごとに

～ごとに has several usages. Other than phrases such as ことあるごとに, it is hardly ever used after verbs. However, it is always very old-fashioned when after verbs to mean “whenever” (See ～度に below). There are four distinct situations that you may see ～ごとに used in.

1. For every constant A (place, point of time, or person), a repetition B occurs.
2. For every variable A (place/person), a different thing exists.
3. It shows that something takes place once every given amount of time.
4. As you repeat a certain constant A, a change progresses. (Rarely seen with verbs)

Examples

6. 祝日 ^{しゅくじつ} {ごと・のたび} に、家族みんなでドライブに出かけることにしてますよ。(話し言葉)

The whole family goes out on a drive {every/whenever there is a} holiday.

Speech Style Note: ～のたびに would make it more 話し言葉的.

7. その企業グループは、会社ごとに、それぞれの社是と社則があるから、よく注意してください。
^{きぎょう} ^{しゃぜ} ^{しゃそく}

As for that corporation group, every company has its own policies and rules. So, please pay close attention.

8. 一雨ごとに、もっと暖かくなる。

With each rain, it gets warmer.

9. ことあるごとに反対するのはだめだよ。
^{はんたい}

It's bad for you to be against with every little thing.

10. 四年ごとに閏年になって、オリンピックが開かれるということは常識だ。
^{うるうとし} ^{じょうしき}

It's common sense that every four years there is a leap year, and the Olympics are held.

normal

Grammar Note: 開かれる is the passive form of the 五段 verb 開く.

漢字 Note: 関 is not a 常用漢字. So, you aren't responsible for it at this time.

Every Time

For "every time", 毎度^{まいど}, 毎回^{まいかい}, 毎次^{まいじ}, 度に^{たび}, and 都度^{つど} exist. The first two are different in that the former is stronger and seen in set phrases like 毎度ありがとうございます. For when you want to say you attend every time, you need to use 毎回 instead. 毎次 is quite formal and is used in the sense of "whenever" but is not used in the spoken language.

11. 六時間毎^{ごと}に 薬^{くすり} を服用^{ふくよう}しなくてははいけません。
You have to take medicine every 6 hours of time.

12. その都度^{しやうりよう}使用料^{はら}を払う。
I pay the usage fee each and every time.

13. 毎回^{さんか}参加^{さんか}します。
I participate each time.

14. 毎次^{まいじ}密接^{みつせつ}に連絡^{れんらく}を取ります。
Each time I'll be in close touch.

15. やる度^{しばい}に失敗^{しばい}する。
To fail whenever one tries.

16. 彼は週毎^{かせ}に 4 万円の稼^{かせ}ぎがあります。
He has earnings of 40,000 yen a week.

Frequency Note: Although 月ごとに and 週ごとに are correct, they are typically replaced with 月に and 週に respectively.

関西弁 Note: 毎度大きに is a very important phrase from 関西弁 meaning the same thing as 毎度ありがとうございます.

〜おきに

With Time

〜おきに is equivalent to "every other". Like all of these other expressions, something is normal ated in a given interval. However, as you can see in the translation, it is not quite the

same.

17. 2日おきに = Every other two days VS 2日ごとに = Every second day
●○○●○○●○○●... ●○○●○○●...

18. 3日おきに = 4日ごとに Every other three days = every fourth day
●○○○●○○○●... ●○○●○○●...

19. 彼女は一日おきに出勤する。
She goes to work every other day

With Distance

For distance, ～ごとに shows precise repetition of distance. So, if you are lining bottles and place them 5メートルごとに, you start from the midpoint from one bottle and place the next bottle five meters from that point. If you place them 5メートルおきに, you are measuring the space in between each bottle, so you measure from the edges of each bottle.

20. 部屋は5分おきに揺れた。
The room shook every other five minutes.

第82課: Potential I: The Potential Form

Expressing potential in Japanese isn't easy. There are many ways not exactly the same to do this, and there are restrictions on these phrases that don't exist for the English "can". In Japanese, the potential is intertwined with the concept of volition. This, not surprisingly, affects the grammar.

Normal Potential Form of Verbs

The direct object of a potential sentence is treated as the subject of an intransitive verb. The object is still the object. が and を, though, may mark the object. There are rules behind it, but for now, we will use them interchangeably.

	Ex.	可能形	Past	Negative	Negative Past
一段	食べる	食べられる	食べられた	食べられない	食べられなかった
五段	行く	行かれる → 行ける	行けた	行けない	行けなかった

normal

来る	来る	来（こ）られる	来られた	来られない	来られなかった
する	する	できる	できた	できない	できなかった
形容 詞	正しい	正しく（して） いられる	正しく（し て）いられた	正しく（して）い られない	正しく（して）いら れなかった
形容 動詞	幸せ だ	幸せでいられる	幸せでいられ た	幸せでいられない	幸せでいられなかつ た

Examples

1. 漢字など書けますか。

Can you write Kanji and what not?

2. ^{しかた}仕方がありませんが、明日は公園に行けません。

It can't be helped, but I can't go to the park tomorrow.

3. 日本語の本が読めますか。

Can you read a Japanese book?

4. このキノコは食べられますか。

Is this mushroom edible?

5. 私が^{かいしゃ}会社で^{しゅっせ}出世できたのは、^{うん}運がよかったまでのことです。

It's just luck that I was able to succeed at the company.

6. その話はできすぎで（、）^{しん}信じられません。

The story is too good to be true.

7. そこまで歩けますか。

Can I walk there?

8. ^{かぞ}いくつまで数えられるのか。(Somewhat rude; a sense of doubt is portrayed)

How far can you count to?

9. ^{じてんしゃ}自転車に乗れますか。

Can you ride a bicycle?

10. ^と鳥は空を飛べる。

Birds can fly.

normal

Literally: Birds can fly through the sky.

11. 僕の学校では日本語が^{なら}習えません。
You can't take Japanese at my school.
12. 明日は仕事があります。ですから、行けません。
I have work tomorrow. So, I can't go.
13. 連絡が^{れんらく}とれなくなったから、帰ってこないか^{しんぱい}心配した。
Because we lost contact with him, we worried whether he would come back home.
14. お金がなくて、バスに乗れませんでした。
I didn't have money, so I couldn't ride the bus.
15. ピアノが^ひ弾けますか。
Can you play the piano?
16. この次の金曜日に来られますか。
Can you come next Friday?
17. うちの赤ん坊^{ぼう}はもうヨチヨチ歩けますよ。 (Feminine)
Our baby can already waddle around.
18. ファックスを^{おく}送れますか。
Can I send a fax?
19. それは言えてるね。
Idiomatic: That's exactly it.

Word Note: See that いえる, aside from literally mean "can say", can also be used idiomatically.

20. 将棋^{しょうぎ}では^か勝てる。 (Contrasting)
I can win at shogi.

Word Note: 将棋 is Japanese chess.

21. お酒ですか。ええ、飲めますよ。
Liquor? Yes, you can drink it.

Meaning Note: In the above sentence, the potential is used in showing permission. Or, depending on context, it may refer to the liquor in question being safe to drink.

22. この水、飲めますか。
Can I drink this water?

Meaning Note: This isn't asking about the ability to drink water. Rather, it's about whether it's OK. The water could be dirty. People can still drink dirty water, but should they is the question.

23. どこに車を^と停められますか。
Where can I park my car?

24. {遅れ・失^{うしな}った時間^{じかん}} は金では償^{つぐな}えない。
Money cannot pay for lost time.

連用形+しない

連用形 + は+ しない is like a strong "won't" in the sense of not being able to do something.

25. 誰^{だれ}の鍵^{かぎ}も合^あいはしない。
Nobody's key will work.

Verb + に + Negative Potential Verb

This is an emphatic pattern used to show that even when you want to do something, you can't.

26. 雪^ふが降^つり積^つもって、出^でかけるに出^でかけられない。
The snow piled up, and we were unable to go out (though we wanted to).

27. 嵐^{あらし}が強^{つよ}くて、行^いくに行^いけない。
The storm is so strong that I can't even go.

More Verbs in the Potential

Can go home	帰 ^{かえ} られる	Can swim	泳 ^{およ} げる
Can die	死 ^し ねる	Can buy	買 ^か える
Can drink	飲 ^の める	Can wait	待 ^{まち} てる
Can take	取 ^と れる	Can sing	歌 ^{うた} える

Verbs that Cannot Have Potentials

Non-volitional verbs cannot have potential forms. This includes verbs of natural phenomenon like 降る, 光る, 流れる, and 凍る, those concerning human emotion and physiology (痛む, 痺れる (to be paralyzed), 羨む (to be jealous), any verbs that end in ある (as they have no volition), and any pattern that has no control involved like phrases with つく and いく such as 想像がつく (one can imagine) and 納得がいく (to accept as valid).

Notice that these are all intransitive verbs. However, it's not to say that all intransitive verbs don't have potential forms. Think of motion verbs like 走る, 行く, 帰る, 戻る, 来る, etc. All of these have potentials because volition is involved in their meanings.

Set Phrase Note: あられる, the potential of ある, does happen to exist in the phrase あられない, which means "impossible". As this is the case, it doesn't contradict what has been said above because there is no volition in impossibility.

とても

とても in a negative sentence means "can't possibly".

28. とってもじゃないけど、そんなもん（なんか）買えねーよ。（Vulgar）
I can't possibly buy something like that!

29. とても泳ぎきれない。
I can't possibly completely swim (that distance).

なかなか

なかなか in a negative sentence means "not easily/by no means". It's used a lot with potential expressions.

30. 漢字がなかなか覚えられなくて困っている学生は、たくさんいますね。

There are a lot of students that are troubled at not being able to quite memorize Kanji, aren't there?

31. 昨夜、なかなか眠れなかったから、今日はとっても眠くてたまらない。

Since I couldn't easily sleep last night, today I really want to sleep and can't stand it.

32. 宿題がなかなかできなくて、困っています。

I'm troubled that I can't seem to do my homework.

33. タバコはよくないと分かっていても、なかなかやめられなくて、困っている人が多いです。

There are a lot of people that can't quite quit smoking even though they know that tobacco is bad.

34. 時差ボケで、なかなか寝られなくて、困りました。

I was troubled because I couldn't quite sleep due to jet lag.

35. 漢字を3000覚えるという目標があるが、なかなか勉強する時間がない。

I have a goal of learning 3,000 Kanji, but I don't quite have the time.

第83課: Potential II: できる

Other than using られる with 一段 verbs and changing 五段 into special potential verbs, you can also use できる in the pattern ～ことができる. できる more or less correlates to the potential form of する. As you can see, though, they do not come from the same word.

できる

する's potential form is できる・出来る. You don't have to add or do anything else. In Japanese, you can use できる with things regarding ability. So, the equivalent of "can English" would be a valid expression.

1. 努力と運が相まって優勝できた。

Together with effort and luck, I was able to be victorious.

2. 加藤さんは碁が出来ます。

Mr. Kato can play go.

3a. 日本語ができます。○

3b. 日本語を話しができません。×

I can speak Japanese.

Literally: I can do Japanese.

Grammar Note: You don't make a verb a noun and use "Noun + ができる (see ことができる). This example shows how できる can show ability/talent. So, ゴルフができない would be correct.

normal

4. 彼らは賛成も反対もできない。
They can't even agree or disagree.

5. もう一泊できますか。
Can I stay for one more day?

Meanings Other Than Potential

The 可能形 is unable to show appearance or what something is made of, but できる sure can. Those are the "other" usages of it mentioned at the beginning of this lesson.

6. 水は酸素と水素からできている。
Water is made up of oxygen and hydrogen.

7. ご飯、できましたよ。
Dinner is made!

8. 人生って、悩みと苦しみからできてるんだなあ。（男性語）
Life really is made from worries and suffering.

9. 人間は体と心からできているのに、みんな体のことばかりに一生懸命気を使って、心のほうに栄養を与えることを忘れている。
Although humans are made up of the body and the heart, everyone focuses solely on their bodies and forget about providing nurture to their hearts.

～ことができる

Instead of using ～（ら）れる, you may use ことができる. This pattern is arguably more common despite being longer. Without qualification, it will sound as if you can't do the phrase at all when used in the negative. This does not have the requirement of being only used with verbs of volition. This can be used to show the potential of something to happen.

10. 私は日本語を話すことができます。
I can speak Japanese.

11. コンピューターを使うことができますか。（Rough）
Can you use a computer?

12. アメフトの試合を見ることができました。
normal was able to see the American football game.

13. 1 0 0 万からの署名を集めることができないでしょう。
You won't be able to collect over a million signatures.

14. その漢字を読むことができませんでした。
I could not read that Kanji.

Particle Note: が in this pattern, due to its specific nature, would otherwise make it sound like you in particular are the one that "can"; however, this is not necessarily the case. Nowadays, ～ことができる has more or less become an affirmative, refined pattern.

～することができる

～することができる shouldn't be used excessively, and it should be avoided in promotion-oriented settings. However, it shows up a lot in magazines and such because it is felt by many to be more polite. Yet, when there is a word limit, できる should do. For a minority of speakers, this phrase is ungrammatical. However, this is an extreme position based mainly on a misconception of case marking in Japanese. In the potential, が does not mark a subject. It marks an object. This may be confusing, but other languages have similar alignment rules. This is simply a quirk in Japanese, and it's not like natives were confused on how to deal with it until being introduced with half-baked knowledge about Western grammar terms.

15. ダウンロードすることができます！
You can download it!

Other Ways to Make する Potential

There are four potential routes that you can take to make the potential with する-verbs.

1. Single characters like 愛 that become verbs with する
→ + することができる; -し得 (え・う) る; + せる.
2. Compounds/loan words--けいけん経験--that become verbs with する.
→ + (することが) できる; し得る.
3. Verbs with する that become voiced such as 感ずる・じる.
→ Conjugate as 一段 verbs; -じ得る; + ことができる.
4. Verbs with a つ such as 発する.
→ + ことができる; -得る.

Verb Note: Verbs like 愛す are treated as 五段 verbs. Also note that something like 理解する

normal

ことができる is typically deemed to be unnecessarily wordy.

Curriculum Note: See Potential III for ～得る.

16. 彼は危険を察することができないやつだな。
He's a guy that can't sense danger, isn't he?

17. 君を愛せない。
I can't love you.

18. 経験（《すること》が）できる。
To be able to experience.

19. 彼は誰でも愛せる人だね。
He's a person that can love anybody, isn't he?

20. これでも中学生の時に日本語を理解できませんでした。
Believe it or not, I couldn't understand Japanese in junior high.

第84課: Pronouns II

Pronouns in Japanese are not easy to use, and it is truly impossible to explain how each may be used. Given that there are endless facets of use to these words, pay attention to what is mentioned. If you take anything as an absolute, you are not giving the material fair justice in interpretation. That's not to say everything is up for grabs. Rather, the fluidity in pronoun usage must be viewed as fluid rather than being defined by strict perimeters.

As a quick grammar note, Japanese pronouns (代名詞) act a lot like regular nouns, and one way we can prove that is simply from the fact that we're talking about so many of them. One thing that you cannot do with them, for instance, is repeat them over and over again in the same sentence. It's not just unnatural to do so, but it results in incorrect Japanese.

1. 私は私の部屋で私のパソコンで私の友達とチャットしていました。X
私は部屋でパソコンで友達とチャットしていました。○
I was talking with my friend with my computer in my room.

The other instances of first person are assumed as defaults unless situation says otherwise, in which case, you should use 自分 instead or some other pronoun other than first pronoun for the other instances for there to be a reason for qualifying. You will learn that although there are especially many first and second person pronouns to choose from, you should try to avoid using them whenever possible.

normal is because Japanese is a pro-drop language: it drops such pronouns unless there is a

need to emphasize the information these pronouns give. For instance, topicalization, contrast, pointing out things are legitimate reasons to use them. Using them so much in a single assignment because you're trying to make a certain word count and are ignoring proper Japanese grammar is not legitimate.

1st Person Pronouns

わたくし: This is a respectful pronoun and has been numerous defined by government guidelines as the proper first person pronoun of choice for polite speech and honorifics. However, the less polite but more neutral form **わたし** has surpassed it in frequency. In 漢字 both are 私. **わたくし** can sound pompous outside of honorifics. This, though, is due to a flouting of speech styles, not intrinsic in the word itself.

わたし: Overuse of this may sound slightly feminine. This is because the trend for men using it is going down, and given the business world esteems proper use of honorifics, **わたくし** can potentially receive more currency.

あっし: In the working class dialect of Tokyo Bay, you also hear **あっし**, which ultimately comes from **わたくし**.

わし: This is casual and used by men over 50 and by old people in general in some regions. As you can see, it is a contraction of **わたし**. It is sometimes written in 漢字 as 儂.

あた(く)し: These are generally deemed to be feminine and causal. Considering the history of traditional feminine speech, this is somewhat ironic. It is certain, though, that the use of these pronouns in polite contexts makes a woman look less educated, despite how unfair it may seem from the use of a feminine word. They may also appear in 下町 speech of Tokyo by both men and women.

あたい: This is found in rougher casual speech of female speakers.

うち: This is often used by women in casual and polite settings; however, there are many regions in Japan where this is a commonplace pronoun used by both genders.

Usage Note: First person pronouns are often dropped and assumed in context. Don't overuse them because it can make you sound egotistic. Don't assume that the situations discussed are the only ones. Tone and one's identity can change their implications a lot.

Practice (1):

Determine which first person pronoun the following people will most likely use.

1. A 50 year old man at home.

2. A foreigner visiting Japan.

normal

3. A teacher speaking to her principal.
4. A female speaking to her boyfriend.
5. A woman you see in an alley.

^{ぼく}僕 is the general pronoun for guys of any age. It is actually used by both genders in song. It may also be used to call for a boy child. 僕, due to its sense of humility, is appropriate in polite speech. ^{おれ}俺 asserts masculinity and ^{おれさま}俺様 is a very pompous variant. ^{わがはい}おら and ^{わがはい}おいらは slang, non-vulgar, country-like variants. ^{わがはい}我輩 is old-fashioned and pompous.

Another old-fashioned pronoun is ^{われ}我. It is normally used in set expressions. The form ^わ我が is used in formal situations to mean "our". Ex. "our country" is ^{わが}我が国. Finally, ^{ちん}朕 is equivalent to the "royal we" used by the Emperor. Other archaic pronouns can be found in [Lesson 216](#).

Practice (2):

Determine which first person pronoun the following people will most likely use.

1. A boy child in kindergarten.
2. A teenager showing off to his friends.
3. A 20 year old male being incredibly ostentatious.
4. Someone sounding archaic.
5. The Emperor and Empress.

Curriculum Note: We'll study dialectical and classical pronouns much later on.

2. ^{かんごふ}あたしは看護婦です。
I am a nurse.

Word Note: ^{かんごし}看護師 is the gender neutral word for nurse.

3. ^{おとこ}俺は男だ。
I am a man.

4. ^{うた}僕は歌う。
I sing.

5. ^{ねこ}我輩は猫である。
I am a cat.

normal **ence Note:** The sentence above is the title of a famous novel.

6. わしは大阪の出^{しゅっしん}身じゃ。(Old person)
I was born in Osaka.

Phrase Notes: To indicate where you are born, add の出身 or 生^うまれ after the name of your birthplace. "Is" is usually だ in plain speech, but じゃ is commonly used by old people.

2nd Person

"You" is considered **rude** because Japanese people *normally address each other by name or title*. So, instead of "Is this your pen?", you'll hear something like "Is this Kim's pen?". When being polite, attach -さん to the name.

There are a lot of second person pronouns to choose from. The most neutral is あなた. It is direct, so use a name if possible. It can also mean "dear" when used by women to their spouses. あんた is a rude variant in Standard Japanese when talking to someone, but it can be seen in casual situations. There are a lot of dialects in which it is the standard second person pronoun. So, know your listener.

A teacher with 50 kids wouldn't refer to her pupils by name, though. Instead, she would use あなたたち, the plural form of you. However, when you should be polite to an audience, use みなさん (everyone).

きみ
君 is a common casual "you" and it can be used towards subordinates and peers. It is also used by men to their lovers. However, this last usage may not be acceptable by some women. It can be seen by some as belittling while by some as intimate. From guy to guy, it may be seen as rude.

まえ
お前 and おめー are often used in vulgar situations by guys. However, they may still be seen used in just casual situations. They are actually extremely commonly used by men in close company as a general word to use with no such stigma. Things are really different when you know someone personally.

Most other second person pronouns are **very rude or old-fashioned** but with various degrees of nuance: てめー (this is from てまえ but the non-contracted form is not used anymore in regular conversation), きさま (貴様), おのれ (originally a first person reflexive pronoun meaning oneself, which it still means in set phrases), (お)ぬし (not that common), われ (most people don't use it aside from actual delinquent speech, which was the basis for pop-culture usage such as in movies and manga), etc. You just don't use these rude pronouns to people. They're just like fighting words.

History Note: It's important to note that 貴様 and お前 used to be very honorific terms, and

the former stayed slightly honorific up until the early Edo Period. おぬし（お主） also has honorific origin.

7. お前は^ま負ける。
You will lose.

8. あなたに^あ会います。
I'll meet with you.

9. 山本^{やまもと}さんのペンですか。(P)
Is this your pen Mr. Yamamoto?

10. あんたはずるい。(Casual; rude)
You're sly.

Vocabulary Note: おたく is a second person pronoun that shows light respect towards someone of relatively equal status. It can also mean "nerd" and "someone's house (honorific)".

11. お宅（、）どちらさん？
Who are you?

12. コンピューターおたく
Computer nerd

13. お名前は何ですか。
What is your name?

Phrasing Note: あなたの名前は何ですか is grammatically possible, but the first is more natural.

Archaism Note: There is an archaic second person pronoun 爾汝^{じじょ} used in the phrase 爾汝^{まじ}の交わり, which refers to using words like お前 and きさま mutually with those you are close to. It is not the kind of phrase most people know about. It's just interesting to know.

3rd Person

The third person pronouns in Japanese that you should know are the following. Japanese actually prefers to avoid the words for he and she as they are more frequently used to refer to boyfriend and girlfriend. That does not mean, though, that you won't seem them clearly used to mean "he" and "she" as this is extremely common in translated works, of which there are many, and you will still hear the pronoun meanings used in conversation.

normal instances should make the intended meaning obvious.

He	彼	She	彼女	That person	あの人
That man	あの男	That woman	あの女	That person (F)	あの方

Word Note: For "that woman" and "that man", add の人 in formal contexts. Or, you may be inclined to say things like あの男性（の方） or あの女性（の方） for man and woman respectively. Japanese also tends to use titles to address others. So, if "he" is the clerk at the bank and you are referring to him, you would say 銀行員さん instead of 彼.

14. 彼は変な男だ。
へん

He is a weird man.

15. 彼女はばかものだ。(PL)
 She is stupid.

16. あの方は水川さんのお母さんです。
かた かあ
 That person over there is Mrs. Mizukawa's mother.

17. あの人はだれですか？ (Polite)
 Who is that person over there?

Keys

Practice (1)

1. わし
2. わたし
3. わたくし
4. あたし
5. あたい

Practice (2)

1. ぼく
2. おれ
3. おれさま
4. われ
5. ちん

第85課: The Particle だけ

In a nutshell, the adverbial particle だけ shows limitation meaning "just/only." This lesson will teach you how it is used to mean *just* this.

The Adverbial Particle だけ

normal だけ means "just/only" and shows the extent/limit of something. だけ can also be after

verbs, adjectives, etc that are in the れんたいけい. So, いやなだけ not いやだけ. This is because it's actually from the noun 丈 (たけ) , which means "length".

Noun + だけ	形容詞 + だけ	形容動詞 + だけ	Verb + だけ
手 + だけ → 手 だけ	ほしい + だけ → ほし いだけ	好き + だけ → 好き なだけ	話す + だけ → 話 すだけ

Particle Note: が and を are optional after だけ. Don't put them before it.

1. テストのことを思う^{ふあん}だけで不安になった。
I became uneasy just at the thought of the test.
2. 赤いリンゴ^{あかいりんご}だけ五つください。
Please give me five red apples only.
3. 君^{きみ}だけを愛している。
I only love you.
4. 私は英語^{えいご}だけ（を）勉強します。
I only study English.
5. 人は外見^{がいけん}だけでは分かりません。
You can't tell a person just by looks.
6. 今回^{こんかい}だけは見逃^{みのが}してください。
Please overlook just this one time.
7. 一人^{ひとり}だけ {です・います} 。
There is only 1 person.
8. ほし^もいだけ持つ。
To carry just what one wants.
9. 彼は、この前の週末^{しゅうまつ せんたく}に洗濯^{せんたく}だけしたのよ。(Feminine)
He only did the laundry last weekend!
10. 彼女は、この前の週末^{しゅうまつ せんたく}に掃除^{そうじ}だけしたんだよ。(Masculine)
She only did cleaning last weekend!

だけで (は) なく

だけで { (は) ・ じゃ } なく means "not only".

11. 猫^{ねこ}がいるだけでなく、犬もいます。
Not only are there cats, but there are also dogs.

- 12a. あの部屋^{へや}は広いだけでなく、とても明るくて美しいです。(ちょっと不自然)
12b. あの部屋は広くて明るいです。(もっと自然)
That room is not only spacious, but it's also very bright and beautiful.
-

だけ (のこと) だ

だけ (のこと) だ states that there is nothing more than something. So, it can be translated as "...is no more than". With the inclusion of のこと, the statement is more forceful.

13. 風邪^{かぜ}を引^ひいただけだよ。
I only caught a cold.
14. 会社^{かいしゃ}が破産^{はさん}しただけのことだ。
It's just that the company went bankrupt.
15. 見ているだけです。
I'm just looking.
16. 膝^{ひざ}を擦^すり剥^むいただけ。
I only grazed my knee.

Speech Level Note: The deletion of だ makes だけ a final particle. It makes the sentence **less blunt**. だけです is perfectly fine for polite speech.

Withこそあど

With これ, それ, あれ, and どれ, だけ translates as "much".

18. 便利^{べんり}なサイトはこれだけです。
These are the **only** useful sites.

19. ^{きっぷ あつ}これだけの切符を集めていた。
normal

I've collected **this many** tickets.

20. それだけなの？ (A little feminine)

Is that all?

21. その入門書^{にゅうもんしょ}は本当に高いが、それだけの価値^{かち}がある。
The beginner's book is really expensive, but it has the worth.

22. どう^{くる}でも僕^{はな}は離しはしない。
No matter how hard it is, I won't let go.

Verb + だけ + Verb

だけ shows a limit, and in this expression you make it even more clear that you are not expecting, wanting, or doing any more.

23. このことは両親にも話すだけは話しておいた方がいい。
As for this, it's best that you at the most talk to your parents.

24. やるだけはやったんだから、静かに結果を待ちましょう。
I'll wait quietly for the results since I did what I had to do.

25. 言うだけ言ったらすっきりした。
I feel good now that I've said (what I had to say).

26. まあ聞^きくだけ聞^きいてくれ。
Come on, at least listen to what I have to say.

Potential + だけ

With the potential form of the verb, it can be translated in this way as "as much as...".

27. できるだけして。
Do as much as possible.

28. 私は走れるだけ走りました。
I ran as much as I could.

なるべく VS できるだけ

Both mean "if possible/as (much) as possible". なるべく is (somewhat) formal. できるだけ can be followed by の. To use it with なるべく, you have to use the rare なるべく/なるだけ.

29. なるべくタバコをすうな。
As much as possible/if possible, do not smoke.

Grammar Note: な in the above sentence creates the negative imperative.

30. なるべく^{ここ}午後に来てほしいです。
I would like you to come during the afternoon if possible.

31. できるだけ多くの金が必要^{ひつよう}！
I need as much money as possible!

32. できるだけ早く帰ってください。
Please come home as soon as possible.

ただ

As an adverb, ただ means "just what you're doing". For example, "you're just hoping that you get a good grade in Japanese class". Other synonyms include ^{もっぱ}専ら and ひたすら. Or, it may stress that there's "nothing else" or that there is "merely" something. Other words for this include たった and わずかに.

ただ...だけ means "mere(ly)", but だけ isn't necessary. 専ら ≡ "entirely", so there is no need for だけ. Neither is there a need for it with ひたすら. ほんの僅か...だけ = "just a few". たった comes from ただ to mean "mere" and is frequently used with だけ.

Examples

33. たった一つ
Just one
34. たった今消えたんだよ。
It disappeared just now!
35. ただいま
I'm home!

Culture Note: Whenever you come home, you say ただいま. People there will response with お帰り（なさい） "welcome home". The added part makes it polite.

37. もっぱらの噂だよ。
It's widely rumored.

38. ただの理由で
With just a mere excuse

39. それは単に程度の問題じゃないか？
Isn't that just a problem of degree?

Word Note: 単に means "purely/simply/merely" and is also often used with だけ.

40. 単に私見を述べただけだよ。
I merely stated my own opinion.

Nuance Note: Simply as in "easily" can be 単純に, 簡単に, 単に, etc. with just slight differences. The first shows a heavy emphasis on simplifying a process down. The second shows more so the easy, and the latter emphasizes on the extent of the matter.

41. 東京までたった10キロです。
It's just 10 kilometers to Tokyo.

42. あられがほんのわずか降っただけだ。(Somewhat written style)
There was only a light amount of hail that fell.

43. ほんの一度だけ
Just one time

Word Note: ほんの is an attributive phrase that means "mere". ほんの少し means "just a little". The word gives the sense that there really is nothing else beyond it. It can also be written as 本の.

44. ただの風邪でしょう。
It's probably just a cold.

Word Note: 風邪 means "cold" but comes from and is pronounced just like 風 (wind).

45 [徒・只]より高いものはない。
Nothing costs more **than** what is given to us.

normal

46. 道はただひとつ。
There is but one way to live.

47. 美はただ皮一枚。
Beauty is but skin-deep.

ただでは in a negative sentence means that something serious is to happen.

48. ただではおかないぞ！
You'll pay for this!

第85課: The Particle だけ

In a nutshell, the adverbial particle だけ shows limitation meaning "just/only." This lesson will teach you how it is used to mean *just* this.

The Adverbial Particle だけ

だけ means "just/only" and shows the extent/limit of something. だけ can also be after **verbs, adjectives, etc** that are in the れんたいけい. So, いやなだけ not いやだけ. This is because it's actually from the noun 丈 (だけ), which means "length".

Noun + だけ	形容詞 + だけ	形容動詞 + だけ	Verb + だけ
手 + だけ → 手 だけ	ほしい + だけ → ほし いだけ	好き + だけ → 好き なだけ	話す + だけ → 話 すだけ

Particle Note: が and を are optional after だけ. Don't put them before it.

1. テストのことを思うだけで不安になった。
I became uneasy just at the thought of the test.

2. 赤いリンゴだけ五つください。
Please give me five red apples only.

3. 君だけを愛している。
I only love you.

4. 私は英語だけ（を）勉強します。
I only study English.

5. 人は外見^{がいけん}だけでは分かりません。
You can't tell a person just by looks.
6. 今回^{こんかい}だけは見逃^{みのが}してください。
Please overlook just this one time.
7. 一人^{ひとり}だけ {です・います} 。
There is only 1 person.
8. ほし^もいだけ持つ。
To carry just what one wants.
9. 彼は、この前の週末^{しゅうまつ せんたく}に洗濯^{せんたく}だけしたのよ。(Feminine)
He only did the laundry last weekend!
10. 彼女は、この前の週末^{そうじ}に掃除^{そうじ}だけしたんだよ。(Masculine)
She only did cleaning last weekend!
-

だけで (は) なく

だけで { (は) ・じゃ} なく means "not only".

11. 猫^{ねこ}がいるだけでなく、犬もいます。
Not only are there cats, but there are also dogs.
- 12a. あの部屋^{へや}は広いだけでなく、とても明るくて美しいです。(ちょっと不自然)
- 12b. あの部屋は広くて明るいです。(もっと自然)
That room is not only spacious, but it's also very bright and beautiful.
-

だけ (のこと) だ

だけ (のこと) だ states that there is nothing more than something. So, it can be translated as "...is no more than". With the inclusion of のこと, the statement is more forceful.

13. 風邪^{かぜ}を引^ひいただけだよ。
I only caught a cold.
14. 会社^{かいしゃ}が破産^{はさん}しただけのことだ。

normal

It's just that the company went bankrupt.

15. 見ているだけです。

I'm just looking.

16. ^{ひざ す む} 膝を擦り剥いただけ。

I only grazed my knee.

Speech Level Note: The deletion of **だ** makes **だけ** a final particle. It makes the sentence **less blunt**. **だけです** is perfectly fine for polite speech.

Withこそあと

With **これ**, **それ**, **あれ**, and **どれ**, **だけ** translates as "much".

18. ^{べんり} 便利なサイトは**これだけ**です。

These are the **only** useful sites.

19. ^{きっぷ あつ} **これだけ**の切符を集めていた。

I've collected **this many** tickets.

20. **それだけ**なの？ (A little feminine)

Is that all?

21. ^{にゅうもんしょ} その入門書は本当に高いが、^{かち} それだけの価値がある。

The beginner's book is really expensive, but it has the worth.

22. ^{くる} **どれだけ**苦しくても僕は^{はな}離しはしない。

No matter how hard it is, I won't let go.

Verb+だけ+Verb

だけ shows a limit, and in this expression you make it even more clear that you are not expecting, wanting, or doing any more.

23. このことは両親にも話す**だけ**は話しておいた方がいい。

As for this, it's best that you at the most talk to your parents.

24. やる**だけ**はやったんだから、静かに結果を待ちましょう。

I'll wait quietly for the results since I did what I had to do.

normal

25. 言うだけ言ったらすっきりした。
I feel good now that I've said (what I had to say).

26. まあ聞いただけ聞いてくれ。
Come on, at least listen to what I have to say.

Potential + だけ

With the potential form of the verb, it can be translated in this way as "as much as...".

27. できるだけして。
Do as much as possible.

28. 私は走れるだけ走りました。
I ran as much as I could.

なるべく VS できるだけ

Both mean "if possible/as (much) as possible". なるべく is (somewhat) formal. できるだけ can be followed by の. To use it with なるべく, you have to use the rare なるべく/なるだけ.

29. なるべくタバコをすうな。
As much as possible/if possible, do not smoke.

Grammar Note: な in the above sentence creates the negative imperative.

30. なるべく^{ここ}午後に来てほしいです。
I would like you to come during the afternoon if possible.

31. できるだけ多くの金^{ひつよう}が必要！
I need as much money as possible!

32. できるだけ早く帰ってください。
Please come home as soon as possible.

ただ

As an adverb, ただ means "just what you're doing". For example, "you're just hoping

that you get a good grade in Japanese class". Other synonyms include ^{もっぱ}専ら and ひたすら. Or, it may stress that there's "nothing else" or that there is "merely" something. Other words for this include たった and わずかに.

ただ...だけ means "mere(ly)", but だけ isn't necessary. 専ら ≡ "entirely", so there is no need for だけ. Neither is there a need for it with ひたすら. ほんの僅か...だけ = "just a few". たった comes from ただ to mean "mere" and is frequently used with だけ.

Examples

33. たった一つ
Just one

34. たった今消えたんだよ。
It disappeared just now!

35. ただいま
I'm home!

Culture Note: Whenever you come home, you say ただいま. People there will response with お帰り（なさい） "welcome home". The added part makes it polite.

37. ^{うわさ}もっぱらの噂だよ。
It's widely rumored.

38. ^{りゆう}ただの理由で
With just a mere excuse

39. ^{たん ていど もんだい}それは単に程度の問題じゃないか？
Isn't that just a problem of degree?

Word Note: 単に means "purely/simply/merely" and is also often used with だけ.

40. ^{しけん の}単に私見を述べただけだよ。
I merely stated my own opinion.

Nuance Note: Simply as in "easily" can be ^{たんじゆん}単純に, 簡単に, 単に, etc. with just slight differences. The first shows a heavy emphasis on simplifying a process down. The second shows more so the easy, and the latter emphasizes on the extent of the matter.

41. 東京までたった10キロです。
It's just 10 kilometers to Tokyo.

42. あられがほんのわず^ふか降っただけだ。(Somewhat written style)
There was only a light amount of hail that fell.

43. ほんの一度だけ
Just one time

Word Note: ほんの is an attributive phrase that means "mere". ほんの少し means "just a little". The word gives the sense that there really is nothing else beyond it. It can also be written as 本の.

44. ただの風邪^{かぜ}でしょう。
It's probably just a cold.

Word Note: 風邪 means "cold" but comes from and is pronounced just like 風 (wind).

45 [徒・只]より高いものはない。
Nothing costs more **than** what is given to us.

46. 道はただひとつ。
There is but one way to live.

47. 美^びはただ皮^{かわ}一枚^{いちまい}。
Beauty is but skin-deep.

ただでは in a negative sentence means that something serious is to happen.

48. ただではおかないぞ！
You'll pay for this!

第87課: Interrogatives II: The Question "How"

Following our coverage of the non-question how with 〜かた, we'll now cover the many phrases for how to make a question "how" in Japanese.

どう & Related Words

どう and どのように are used to mean "how" as in regards to action. However, the two words are not the same when it comes to politeness. どう is typically more casual, and

normal

when it is used in polite speech, it still has a somewhat casual feel to it. どのように, on the other hand, is more formal and is expected in more polite contexts as well as in written documents.

1. この状^{じょうきょう}況をどのように覆^{くつがえ}すことができるのでしょうか。
How can we overturn this condition?
 2. どのように新しい世界を開拓されてきたのか、お聞きしました。 (Humble speech)
I asked how a new world has been pioneered.
 3. その印象はどのように感じますか。
How do you feel about the impression?
- どう may also simply describe an uncertain state. A politer form would be いかが. For instance, ～はどうですか meaning “how is...?” is more politely as ～はいかがですか. To further make it more polite, you can replace ～ですか with ～でしょうか as です is often too abrupt for truly polite/honorific utterances. Of course, when the situation does not call for such measures, ～でしょうか would be taken the opposite way.
4. 「仕事はどうですか」 「私は自営業^{じえいぎょう}です」
How is your work?” I am self-employed”
 5. お天気はどうですか。
How is the weather?
 6. 日本をどう思いますか。
What do you think about Japan?
 7. 広東語^{かんとうご}のクラスはどうですか。
How is your Cantonese class?
 8. 皆様いかがお過ごしですか。 (Honorific)
How is everyone fairing?

どうか

どうか, the combination of どう and the particle か, either means どうぞ (which is ultimately also a combination of どう with the particle ぞ) in the sense of pleading or なんとか. Do not confuse this with かどうか. In かどうか, the か is used to mark the end of a question clause inside a larger sentence.

9. そのことはどうかしなければなりません。

We have to do something about it.

10. この頃彼女はどうかしてるね。

Something's been wrong with her lately.

11. どうか許してください。

Please forgive me.

12. 頭がどうかなってしまいそうだ。

My head feels like it's going crazy.

どんな風に・どういう風に

どんな^{ふう}風に and どうい^{ふう}う風に are similar words meaning “how”. Both are used to describe how things are done in regards to manner/style. The first is more casual while the latter is more polite/formal. 風 is read as ^{ふう} when used to mean method; manner; way; style; appearance etc.

13. いまびはどういう風に作られているんですか。

How has IMABI been being made?

14. どんな風に生きれば幸せになれるんだろう。

I wonder how one could live happily.

15. どんな風に天（国）に導かれるのでしょうか？

How is one led to heaven?

16. 日本語は外国人にどんな風に聞こえているのでしょうか。

How does Japanese sound to foreigners?

どうやって

どうやって is another word for “how” often used in asking how something is done. This makes it especially useful in asking for directions and how things work. Even so, どう and どのように may also be used in the same way.

17. ここからどうやって駅に行けばいいのか全く分からないんですよ。

I have no idea how to get to the train station from here.

18. どう^{おうぼ}やって応募したらいいですか？

normal

How should I apply?

19. どうやって英語を勉強すればいいの？ (Casual)

How should I study English?

20. 信頼しんらいはどのように作りますか。

How does one build trust?

How Much

“How” as in “how much” in degree is expressed with either どれくらい, どれぐらい, どのくらい, or どのぐらい. There is almost no difference in meaning or nuance. However, the variants are listed from most to least common. This is not to insinuate any one of them is not used a lot because they all are.

21. 日本にどれくらい滞在するつもりですか。

How long do you plan to reside in Japan?

22. ひんどどれくらいの頻度で運動したらこうか効果を期待できるのでしょうか。

How often should one exercise and expect to see effects?

23. 宇宙はどのくらい広いの？

How wide is the universe?

24. 理想の彼女しんちょうの身長ってどれくらい？ (Casual)

How tall is your ideal boyfriend?

25. どれくらいの頻度でトイレに行くの？ (Casual)

How often do you go to the bathroom?

26. 愛ちゃんの耳がどのくらい赤くなっているのかが気がかりだ。

How red Ai-chan's ears have gotten is a big worry.

いくら

“How much” as in money or quantity is expressed with いくら. It is also seen in the phrases いくらか, いくらも, and いくらでも.

- **いくらか**: Equivalent to 幾分か and 少し. It may also be used in the same sense as 多少 when used as an adverb. Whereas いくらか can be used for degree and quantity, いくぶんか must only be used for quantity.

- **いくらも**: Shows a very large degree. With the negative, it is equivalent to **ほとんど**.
- **いくらでも**: This may be equivalent to **どれほどでも** and can be used to exaggerate the amount of something. Whereas **いくらでも** works for quantity and price, **どれほどでも** only works for degree. With **ない**, it's just like **いくらも** showing that the degree/amount is not as large as one thought. With **いい**, it means "any amount is fine".

Spelling Note: **いくら** may be spelled as **幾ら**.

27. 出来れば、アメリカ人に、いくら払うとかどんな場所でチップを期待されているのかについて、聞いたほうがいいですよ。

If you can, it would be best to ask an American on how much and in what places it is expected of you to tip.

28. たいじゅう 体重はいくらですか。
What is your weight?

29. こおり おんど 氷の温度はいくらですか。
How hot is the ice?

31. お金がいくらでも使える。
I can use as much money as I want.

32a. 立派な品をどれほどでも買おう！

32b. 立派な品をいくらでも買おう！
I'll buy splendid items no matter how much (there are).

Sentence Note: 32a can only refer to quantity of what is being bought. 32b would usually be interpreted as referring to price, but it is ambiguous enough to refer to quantity as well.

33. インドの人口はいくらでしょうか。
What is the population of India?

34. 値段はいくらでもいいから、売ってくれ。(Vulgar)
The price is no problem, so sell it (to me)!

35. ていじ がく 提示する額はいくらですか？
How much is your offering price?

36. ざいこ のこ 在庫はいくらも残っていない。
Almost nothing remains in the stockpile.

37. 「今日^{きょう}ドルは何^{なん}円^{えん}ですか」 「為替^{かわせ}レートはいくらか分かりません」
"How many yen is one dollar today?" "I don't know how much the exchange rate is".

38. 「日本からアメリカまでいくらぐらいかかりますか」 「旅行^{りょこう}費^ひはいくらか分かりません」
"About how much is it from Japan to America?" "I don't know how much the travel costs are".

何ぼ

何ぼ can be used for not only price but also quantity in general. This is used in 関西弁 and other parts of Japan.

39. これ、ちょっと何ぼ？
How much is this?

40. このリンゴ何ぼ？
How much is this apple/are these apples?

いくつ

"How many" as in age or counting things is いくつ. However, this is a generic word. So, for counter phrases, you must use the pattern 何+counter. 幾- is sometimes seen instead of 何- in native phrases in literary contexts.

いくつか means "a few". It may be used as a noun or adverb. Regardless of its syntactic role, it is always in reference to 数. いくつも is on either end of the spectrum, being able to express large and hardly any amount depending on whether the sentence is positive or negative.

41. おいくつですか。
How old are you?

42. 虹^{にじ}には色^{いろ}がいくつありますか。
How many colors does a rainbow have?

43. あのクラスには何人いますか。
How many people do you have in this class?

44. 共通^{きょうつう}点^{てん}がいくつがある。

normal

To have some points in common.

45. 選択肢はいくつも残っていない。
There's absolutely no option to be had.

46. 指サイズはいくつですか？
What's your finger size?
Literally: How much is your finger size?

Word Note: いくら, although it means "how much", is not used here because "finger size" is not deemed as something of quantity. If you akin finger size to age, the logic behind this may be clearer.

第88課: Interrogatives III: With Particles

We've seen the basic interrogatives, the many ways to say how, and other phrases involving this thing. Now it is time to see them used with particles.

With か & も

When a 疑問詞 is followed by the particles か or も, you get expressions for "some..." and "all..." respectively. The expressions with も have positive and negative definitions.

	+ か	+ も
だれ・どなた	Someone	Either/Everyone/Neither/Nobody
なに	Something	Everything/Nothing
なぜ	Somehow	X
どうして	X	By any means
いつ	Sometime	Always
どこ・どちら	Somewhere	Everywhere/Nowhere
どれ	Every (one/thing)	Anything/none
どう	Somehow or another	Much

か makes the "some". When も follows these words, it gives a meaning of "all". In a negative expression, it does the complete opposite. 何も is almost always used with the negative, but it is positive in 何もかも and 何も^{すべ}全て.

normal **of Speech Note:** These words are either used as nouns or adverbs. Remember that

these words are no longer interrogatives.

Examples

1. 仕事も何もかも忘れて、休暇を楽しんだ。
I forgot about work and everything, and I enjoyed a vacation.

Grammar Note: To say "nobody's", use "誰のXも". 誰の車も = "nobody's car". "Someone's car" = 誰かの車. 誰か is an indefinite pronoun. For always, いつもの is right.

2. 彼らの住んでいる所はどこも街道筋に近い。
Wherever they are living, it is close to the highway.

3. 誰かがおいしいクッキーを全部食べた。
Somebody ate all of the delicious cookies!

4. いつも何を考えているのですか。
What are you always thinking about?

5. 彼は本当にいつも親切です。
He is really always kind.

6. あいつはいつも愚痴を零してる。
That guy is always complaining.

Meaning Note: 愚痴を零す is a set phrase meaning "to complain". Also note that the character 零 is hardly ever used.

7. 犯人をどこかで見たか。
Did you see the criminal somewhere?

8. いつか留学する。
To some day study abroad.

Word Note: The following is **wrong**: 日本の大学で留学する. 留学する is used with に. So, 日本に留学する is correct. 日本の大学で勉強する is correct, though.

9. 誰もが彼の商才を認めている。
Everyone recognizes his business ability.

10. 私の英語の講座はどれも文法を扱った。
Every one of my English courses dealt with grammar.
11. あなたのコンピューターはどこも悪くありません。
There's nothing wrong anywhere with your computer.
12. 食べ物が何もない。
I have nothing to eat.
13. 彼女は何も答えませんでした。
She answered nothing.
14. アクセルに何かおかしいところがあります。
There's something wrong with the accelerator.
15. 今日の彼はどうかしている。
He's not himself today.
16. 色々どうもありがとうございます。
Thank you very much for everything.
17. 昨日はどうも。
Thanks for yesterday.
18. 今日は魚がどうも食わない。
The fish won't bite for some reason today.
19. 何かの拍子でケータイを落としたんです。
By some chance, I dropped my cellphone.
20. 何か趣味はありますか。
Do you have **any** hobbies?
21. 彼らはワープロにいつも手を焼いている。
They're always having trouble with their processor.

Phrase Note: 手を焼く is a set phrase similar to "not know what to do/be at a loss with; to be put out".

With でも・ても

normal

When an interrogative is followed by **でも**, it creates an "any" indefinite pronoun. These phrases are only used as adverbs. So, you can't follow them with particles like **が**.

なん	+ でも	Anything
だれ・どなた	+ でも	Anybody/anyone
いつ	+ でも	Anytime
どこ・どちら	+ でも	Anywhere
どれ	+ でも	Anything (out of many)

22. **いつでも**いい。

Anytime is OK.

23. この棚の商品は**どれでも**千円です。

Whichever item on this shelf is 1,000 yen.

24. **どこでも**好きなところへ行く。

I will go **anywhere** I like.

25. 論評の結果は**いつでも**悪いことだ。

The effect of criticism is **always** a bad thing.

26. 彼は**何でも**高価な物を好む。

He likes **anything** expensive.

Word Note: 好む is similar to "to prefer".

Interrogative + ~ても

When a question word is used with **ても**, it creates a "no matter..." statement.

27. 阿蘇山は**いつ見ても**きれいですね。

Mount Aso is beautiful **no matter when** you see it, isn't it?

28. 僕は**何を食べても**、太らない。

No matter what I eat, I don't get fat.

29. **どこに行っても**僕は君の側にいるよ。

No matter where you go, I will be by your side.

normal

30. 誰の鍵^{かぎ}がドアを開けても、僕がいるから君はこの部屋に安全^{あんぜん}だよ。
No matter whose key opens the door, you are safe in this room because I'm here.

31. 何度見ても面白いです。
No matter how many times I see it, it's funny.

第89課: The Particle の II

This lesson will be about two interesting usages of の. The first will be about its unique role in attribute clauses in which it is sometimes interchangeable with が. We will then learn how の can even be used like a noun!

In Attribute Clauses

の may be used to mark the thing or person carrying out an action that is the attribute of something. In other words, it may replace が. This is only seen in attributive expressions.

1. 雪の降る夜
A snowy night
2. 書類の入ったかばんは？
(What about) the bag with the documents?
3. 本当も本当、嘘^{うそいつわ}偽りのない話だよ。
It's really really true, it's a story without any lies.

Particle Note: Sometimes の is required when there is still a sense of possession. This is the case for Exs. 4 and 5.

4. 公園で子供の遊んでいる声が聞こえる。
I can hear the voices of kids playing in the park.
5. 地面の緩い状態が続いています。
The ground's instability continues.

Grammar Note: Japanese usually allows the use of either が or を in an attribute clause, and length doesn't have much to do with the decision unless the phrase is excessively long, in which case が is often obligatory. One case, though, in which が is clearly obligatory is when a dummy noun is used to attach to an otherwise independent clause.

Think of patterns involving こと. You can't say ～XのYことができる. Below, [] brackets

normal

6. [[北部の人口の少ない] 自治体など作業が完了した] ところから [順に開票結果が発表される] 見通しです。

With the northern municipalities with little population completing operation, voting results are planned to be announced one by one.

From NHK on September 9, 2014.

7. 独立への賛成が反対を上回れば、投票率に関係なく、[スコットランドのイギリスからの独立が決まる] ことになり、イギリスの公共放送BBCは終夜、開票速報番組を放送するなど、関心の高さを示しています。

From NHK on September 9, 2014.

In disregard to voter turnout, if supporters for independence surpass the opposition, the decision for whether Scotland receives independence from England is made, and the British public broadcasting network BBC is showing its heightened interest in the matter by airing a voting result program all night.

Practice (1): Translate the following. You may use a dictionary.

1. A mother that likes video games. 2. A rainy day. 3. Her pencil. 4. Apartment in New York.

The Nominalizer の

It may also be used as a nominalizer. 読むのが好きだ = I like reading; の makes 読む a noun. This usage of の is very interesting grammatically as it is treated like a dummy noun. So, it may be best to not think of it as a particle in this context.

8. 私は泳ぐのが好きです。

I like to swim/I like swimming.

9. 私は歌うのが好きではありません。

I don't like to sing.

10. それを買うのはだめだ。

Buying that is useless.

Practice (2): Translate the following. You may use a dictionary.

1. I don't like movies.

2. I don't like to go to the movie theater.

3. The blue one.

One

の can be used to make indefinite pronouns by nominalizes things. With things other than the non-past form a verb, the result of の-nominalization is an indefinite pronoun. An indefinite pronoun has the same properties as a noun. So, although we're using a particle to make it, other particles may follow including の. Now, the doubling of particles is usually unnatural. However, it is sometimes inevitable.

11. 私が買ったの

The one I bought

12. あれは緑色のです。

That over there is a green one.

13. この傘^{かさ}はだれのですか。

Whose umbrella is this?

14. どっちの本が僕^{ぼく}のですか。

Which book is mine?

15. 刺身は {新しい・新鮮^{しんせん}な} のがおいしい。

As for sashimi, fresh ones are delicious.

Grammar Note: If you were to have something nominalized with の and then made possessive, you get two の in a row.

16. 白っぽいものの二種類がある。

They have two kinds of the whitish ones.

17. 足が臭いのを治す方法を教えてくださいませんか。

Could you tell me of ways to fix my feet from stinking?

18. 死んだのが馬鹿だったということは間違いない。

There is no doubt that the one who died was an idiot.

Keys

Practice (1)

1. ビデオゲームの好きな母親^{ははおや}。

2. 雨の降る日; 雨降りの日。

normal

3. 彼女の鉛筆。
4. ニューヨークのアパート。

Practice (2)

1. 映画が好きじゃない。
2. 映画館に行くのが好きじゃない。
3. 青

第90課: The Particle で II

This lesson will finish our coverage on the most fundamental uses of the particle で. They are really different from the one's you've already learned. So, try not to confuse them with each other! This lesson will conclude with an exercise that will challenge you to use all your knowledge of the combined four uses covered in this lesson and the previous lesson on で.

The Particle で Continued

1. で shows the basis of an action/event not of one's volition--"due to". It's used with nouns that indicate things such as natural phenomena, events, illnesses, etc. The verb should not show any will of someone. This is because nothing and no one can cause natural phenomena.

1. 彼は心不全で死んだ。
He died due to heart failure.
2. 被害者は出血多量で死にました。
The victim died from loss of blood.
3. その火事はマッチでの火遊びが原因で起こりました。
The fire was caused by playing with matches.
4. 武士は怪我で死んだ。
The warrior died from his wounds.
5. 学校はクリスマスで休みになりました。
The school has closed for Christmas/the holidays.
6. 寒さで震える。

normal

To shake from the cold.

7. 私は宿題で忙しいです。
I'm busy with homework.

8. 喜び^{よろこ}で我^{われ}を忘れました。
I forgot myself from joy.

Pronoun Note: 我 is used here like a set phrase. Normally, you just don't get to use 我 whenever you want.

9. 悲しい気持ちでいっぱいです。○/△
I'm filled with sad emotions.

Naturalness Note: Not all speakers like this phrase, but ○○（という）気持ちでいっぱい is becoming very common these days. Speakers who find this phrase unnatural would replace it with something like 悲しいです or とても悲しく思っています。

2. で shows an extent which may create juncture. Juncture deals with a point in time or place. However, it is not definite in nature as the particle に. This does not mean phrases like 一秒で are impossible. The purpose of に is to show exact time. Think of the difference as "The ice fully melted in 3 hours, 4 minutes, and 32 seconds" vs "The ice fully melted in three hours". Juncture could also be used to show at what point something happens. The vagueness of this comment is on purpose. For instance, you'd use で to show at what temperature something boils or melts.

Translation isn't really important to focus on, but it usually translates to "at" or "for". As for other specific instances this で can be used in, it can show summation, which helps with stating prices like in Ex. 15 (this sentence would be said by say a person who knows you rather than a clerk).

Examples

10. 世界^{せかい}で一番高い山はエベレストです。
The tallest mountain in the world is Mount Everest.

11. 母^はは二十歳^{たち}で結婚^{けっこん}した。
My mother got married at age 20.

12. 明日^{わか}でお別れた。
normal

I leave you tomorrow.

13. 自分で考えてください。

Please think for yourself.

14. チームで^{たんとう}担当^すするのが好きじゃない。

I don't like managing with the team.

15. ^{ぜんぶ}全部で500円ですよ。

It's 500 yen with everything.

16. 10時^{へいてん}で閉店です。

We will close at 10.

17a. 彼は百歳^なで亡くなりました。

17b. 彼は享^{きょうねん}年^{さい}100歳でした。

He passed away at 100 years old.

18. 水は0℃^{ど こお}で凍る。

Water freezes at 0 °C.

19. 一秒で分かった！

I found out in a second!

Practice: Translate the following. If it's in English translate it into Japanese (polite speech). If it's in Japanese, translate it in English.

1. In a week it becomes summer vacation.

2. あなたの^{とけい}時計では何時ですか。

3. You make butter with milk.

4. その本を3千円で買いました。

5. ガラスで指を切る。

6. 2つで500円です。

7. Can you do it in 20 minutes?

8. 学校に自転車^{かよ}で通う。

9. He broke it due to carelessness.

10. Please write in pen.

11. 10時になった。

12. To end with sadness.

normal

13. 雨で中止になりました。
14. 雪でバスが来ませんでした。
15. I went by myself.

The Conjunction で

The conjunction で is a contraction of それで, which utilizes usage 4 from above from the sense of juncture (connecting sentences) in a sense related to reasoning. This makes it very similar to the particle ので, which may also be found starting a sentence in なので. The use of なので in this manner is relatively new, and a lot of people think it is wrong. So, keep this in mind as well.

However, unlike で, the speaker is not intending on simply responding and or trying to change the topic. なので is "so" as in "so, this happened" because of what is stated before it.

20. で、君は大丈夫？
So, are you alright?
21. 皆その法案に同意しませんでした。なので、政治家は代案を出しました。
Everyone didn't agree to the bill. So, the politicians proposed an alternative plan.
22. で、どうなったん（っ）すか。(Colloquial)
So, what happened?

Key

Practice

1. 後一週間で夏休みになります。
2. What's the time on your watch?
3. バターはミルクで作ります。
4. I bought that book for 3,000 yen.
5. To cut a finger on glass.
6. It is 500 yen for two.
7. 20分でできますか。
8. I commute to school by bicycle.
9. 彼は不注意でそれを壊しました。
10. ペンで書いてください。

normal became 10 o' clock.

12. 悲しめで終わる。

Note: Remember that the predicate function is the 終止形. -ます would change the definition.

13. It was postponed due to the rain.

14. The bus didn't come due to (the) snow.

15. 一人で行きました。

第91課: Might: かもしれない

I might do this. That might be the case. As you can see, this lesson is about how to say might as in these contexts in Japanese. Be sure to say this phrase with pitch rising on か.

かもしれない

かもしれない means "might" as in there is a possibility of something. The predicate that it follows should be in the plain form, but だ is deleted when directly before it. It may also be seen as やも知れない or contracted to かも in casual speech. It is typically just written in かな.

Phrases like ひょっとして (maybe/possibly) and もしかしたら・もしかすると・もしかして (perhaps/possibly) are almost always used with かもしれない.

1. まだ家へ帰っていなかったかもしれない。

He might have not been going home yet.

2. あんたにとっては、些^{ささい}細なこともけどな、でも俺には大切な問題だぞ。（Masculine; Vulgar）

For you, it may like be trivial, but to me it's a like a big deal!

3. 彼はもう帰ったかもな。

He might have already come home.

4. 人間が全ての石油^{せきゆ}を使いきってしまう時^{とき}が {訪^{おとず}れる・来る} かもしれません。

The time may come when man will have used up all oil.

5. なるほど、君のいう通りかもしれんね。

Well then, you may be right.

6. 彼はひょっとしてまだ外にいるでしょうか。

Might he still be outside?

normal

7. ひょっとしたら彼女はここへ来るだろう。

She will possibly come here.

8. 前の試験が難しかったなら、^{しけん}今度の試験も難しいかもしれません。^{こんど}

If the previous exam was difficult, the next exam may also be difficult.

9. それだけの意味はあろうかもしれない。

There might just be that much meaning.

By 堀辰雄.

Grammar Note: かもしれない {だろう・でしょう} would be weird because of doubling more or less the same thing, but it turns out that reversing this as such in the example is possible. However, this speech style is older.

10. もしかしたら彼は気が変わるかもしれません。

He might change his mind.

11. ひょっとすると雨に^あ遭うかもしれません。

Chances are that we'll meet rain.

Alternative Note: Possible as in "possible to do" is expressed with the adjective ^{かのう}可能な.

12. 計画の^{じっこう}実行が可能だ。

The plan's execution is possible.

第92課: Pluralization

In English and most other Indo-European languages, grammatical number is expressed with inflections such as -s. However, Japanese grammar does not have grammatical number. This fact is very hard for beginners to grasp, but given now that you have had more experience in Japanese, it is time to look at this serious issue in greater detail.

Terminology Note: Indo-European (インド・ヨーロッパ祖語) simply refers to the ancestral language that ties English with most languages from Europe to India.

Lack of Grammatical Number

However, the fact that Japanese doesn't have grammatical number doesn't mean that Japanese lacks the ability to differentiate between something that is singular and something that is plural. After all, if you use quantity qualifiers such as 多くの or 少しの, there isn't any

normal

something.

1. 花がたくさん咲いている。

There are a lot of flowers blooming.

Noun classification differs considerably between English and Japanese. In English, when we sense that something is more than 1, we attribute that to being plural and unconsciously use a form of –s, ignoring instances where the singular and plural form are the same and other such irregularities. All Japanese nouns are ^{ちゅうしやう}全部抽象名詞. So, there is a vague feeling in comparing it to English. So, if you were to want to say 2 pens, you would say 2本のペン. There is no reason to ever have any inflection on ペン.

In English, there are also nouns that are countable and others that are not countable. For example, chalk isn't countable. "Chalks" would refer to different kinds of chalk, not there being two pieces of chalk. In Japanese, no such distinctions are made. There are counter phrases that help bridge this gap.

Grammatical number in English also has a direct correlation with numbers themselves. In Christianity, Judaism, and Islam, there is but one God. However, in Japanese, you have the well-known yet often misunderstood phrase ^{やまと}大和^{やおよろず}には八百万の神がある. This is not saying that there is some exact number of 神 in Japanese, but that there is a lot. 8, 9, 10, and 10,000 were often used in the ancient period to refer to a lot.

Thus, the items that do express plurality in Japanese are different from grammatical number in the sense that added nuances are attributed to particular endings, and these particular endings are used with particular nouns.

Form Note: There are rare instances in Japanese that hint that Japanese did have a clearer distinction of plurality in some words. For instance, ひ becoming か in counters after 1. 1 day used to be ひとひ. Then, 2 days is ふつか. Notice the change? The same thing goes for people. You get ひとり but then ふたり, みたり, よたり. This とり → たり is of the same vein as ひ → か. In fact, there's even an old phrase 日並べて (かなべて) that refers to days one after another.

～たち・達

More frequently written in 漢字 in literature, the suffix ～たち is the closest thing in Japanese to the “-s” in English. However, it typically indicates a group of things. For instance, when you say 石田君たち, 石田君 is pointed out as the head of a group of a multitude of people, which could be his family or his group of friends. Thus, correct interpretation of a phrase with ～たち is heavily sensitive to context.

2. 私たちは賛成します。

We agree.

3. 山田君たち、頭が悪いね。

Yamada's group isn't smart.

4. 理事たちは、大島理事長排斥に手をつけると言った。

The directors said that they would start work on the boycott of Board Chairman Ohshima.
From 混声の森 (下) by 松本清張.

5. 数々のすばらしいヒット曲をまだまだたくさんの方たちに届け続けてほしかったです。

I wanted [her] to still continue delivering many wonderful hit songs to a lot of people.

From the words of the singer 八代亜紀 upon hearing the death of singer 藤圭子.

Another related issue is something like 犬たち. Although this could very well mean “dogs”, depending on context, it could also comprehensively refer to a multitude of all sorts of (similar) animals.

Grammar Note: Unless if something that could be viewed as belonging in a group like a boat in a fleet, plural suffixes are rarely ever used with inanimate nouns.

Word Note: 友達, note the voicing of 〜たち, can still be used even if you are referring to just one friend. This shows how fragile the nuances of these endings are. This is all possible due to the lack of grammatical number. This is of the same vein as 子供, which will be touched on later in this lesson. However, 友たち is possible, which would refer to there being a plurality in friends.

Classical Japanese Note: 〜達 started out as a very respectful suffix used with 神・貴人

きんだち
“aristocrat” (公達 = Kings; children of nobles; nobleman/noblemen). It eventually lessened to being used with light respect, and in Modern Japanese it is no longer honorific. Notice how the ambiguity in plurality has existed when the suffix is voiced.

〜ら・等

〜ら is casual, so it should not be used with わたくし. However, it does get used with わたしら. This, though, is not that common in 標準語. For the most part, both 〜ら and 〜たち attach to basically any pronoun or person noun.

They are also used a lot with 3rd person pronouns, but 彼女ら is oddly not near as common as 彼女たち. To make things more weird, 彼ら is far more common than 彼たち. For nouns of person, ら is the ideal choice in formalized speech. Nothing or たち would be more

normal

6. 私らには分かりません。

We don't understand.

7. 夏は、私らみたいな、いわゆる家出少女が溢れる季節だ。

Summer is a season where so-called runaway girls like us overflow.

From 冷たい誘惑 by 乃南アサ.

8. 僕らは強くないさ。

We aren't strong.

〜ら also attaches to これ, それ, and あれ. However, it is not actual obligatory to express these words in a plural sense.

9. これらをXと呼びます。

We call these X.

10. これらの手掛かりを繋ぎ合わせてみよう。

Let's try to link these clues together.

漢字 Note: This suffix is also sometimes spelled as 等.

〜ども・共

Rarely written in 漢字, the suffix 〜ども is typically used as a humble plural marker for pronouns. For instance, わたくしども is quite common for “we” in this group sense. It may also be used to refer to groups condescendingly. So, you can see it with わたくし, やつ, 手前, etc. It should not be used 僕, あなた or titles such as 先生^{せんせい}.

11. 私どもにお任せください。

Please leave it to us.

12. 野郎ども (You have seen nothing)

Bastards

13. 自分のことを男は「俺」ということが多いが、俺共は「オレドー・オイドー」になり単数に使われることも多い。

Men often call themselves "ore", but "us" becomes, "oredō/oidō", and these are used a lot for the singular.

Dialect Note: This sentence comes from 大分方言 by 高田和彦. 俺共 is a rather interesting combination, but 俺 is being used in a more casual sense while being qualified with 共 to be

normal what humble. In this dialect, the dialectical form of 俺共 ends up becoming singular

again, which happens in 子供 too.

14. 「^{むらびと}邑人どもには^{なが}わたしが^{とうじ}永の病で湯治に来たといつわっていたのだ。．．．」
The villagers are lying that I've come to get a hot-spring cure for an eternal illness.

From ^{かるのみこ}軽王子と^{そとおりひめ}衣通姫 by 三島由紀夫.

In older Japanese, ～ども can be seen with 事. Thus, you get 事ども. Another well studied example of ～ども is 子供・子ども. The character for it in 子供 is あて字. However, again, the problem about 子供 is that it is usually used in the singular sense. Thus, the suffix has lost its original meaning. Thus, you often see 子どもたち.

～がた・方

～がた is a very polite plural suffix that denotes a high status. One of the most common examples is 方々, from which it came. Thus, it is often spelling in 漢字 as 方. It is **not** compatible with first person pronouns, degrading second person pronouns, or titles that suggest a lower status. It may be used with words such as 先生 meaning "teacher" and ^{みなさま}皆様 meaning "everyone".

Pronouns and Pluralization

The following pronouns in their plural forms are listed from most formal to least formal.

1st	私共	我々	我ら	わたくし たち	私[達・ ら]	僕[達・ ら]	あたし[た ち・ら]	俺[たち・ ら]
2nd	皆様 (が た)	皆さ ん	み(ん) な	あなたが た	あなた たち	君[達・ ら]	あんた[た ち・ら]	お前[た ち・ら]
3rd	彼達	彼女 達	彼ら	彼女ら				

Speech Note: みんな is casual. みな also has the form 皆々様, which is a more emphatic yet very honorific form used a lot in New Years cards, 年賀状, and other situations when honorific speech is expected.

15. 私^{こういち}たちは高一です。
We are 10th graders.

16. normal 俺^{normal}らはいる。

We're here.

17. 我々の^{もんだい}問題です。
It's our problem.

18. 皆々様のご多幸をお祈り申し上げます。(Very Humble).
I pray that you all may be very fortunate (in the new year).

19. 自分らの手で書いたらしく、下手な字で、行も乱れていた。
It seemed to be written by them, and the handwriting was bad, and the lines were messed up.
From 混声の森 (下) by 松本清張.

Word Note: The use of 自分 refers to a person in the story being accused of a relationship with another person in the academy, and so the reason why the author chose to pluralize 自分 was to refer to the two as a group in a condescending way, though the post being talked about was written by one person.

20. その点われわれも同感です。あるいは、ほかの理事の方に逆効果を与えるかも分かりませんな。
We are sympathetic as well with that point. Perhaps, it may give the opposite effect to the other directors.

Grammar Note: Here, 理事の方 is being used in the plural sense, and this is obvious from context. So, again, remember that although there are plural suffixes in Japanese, you must be aware that in situations such as this and in many instances, using them is not necessary and could at the very worst be wrong.

第92課: Pluralization

In English and most other Indo-European languages, grammatical number is expressed with inflections such as –s. However, Japanese grammar does not have grammatical number. This fact is very hard for beginners to grasp, but given now that you have had more experience in Japanese, it is time to look at this serious issue in greater detail.

Terminology Note: Indo-European (インド・ヨーロッパ祖語) simply refers to the ancestral language that ties English with most languages from Europe to India.

Lack of Grammatical Number

However, the fact that Japanese doesn't have grammatical number doesn't mean that Japanese lacks the ability to differentiate between something that is singular and something ^{that is plural}. After all, if you use quantity qualifiers such as 多くの or 少しの, there isn't any

normal

problem in telling whether someone is referring to just one thing or more than one of something.

1. 花がたくさん咲いている。

There are a lot of flowers blooming.

Noun classification differs considerably between English and Japanese. In English, when we sense that something is more than 1, we attribute that to being plural and unconsciously use a form of -s, ignoring instances where the singular and plural form are the same and other such irregularities. All Japanese nouns are ^{ちゅうしょう}全部抽象名詞. So, there is a vague feeling in comparing it to English. So, if you were to want to say 2 pens, you would say 2本のペン. There is no reason to ever have any inflection on ペン.

In English, there are also nouns that are countable and others that are not countable. For example, chalk isn't countable. "Chalks" would refer to different kinds of chalk, not there being two pieces of chalk. In Japanese, no such distinctions are made. There are counter phrases that help bridge this gap.

Grammatical number in English also has a direct correlation with numbers themselves. In Christianity, Judaism, and Islam, there is but one God. However, in Japanese, you have the ^{やまと} ^{やおよろず}well-known yet often misunderstood phrase 大和には八百万の神がある. This is not saying that there is some exact number of 神 in Japanese, but that there is a lot. 8, 9, 10, and 10,000 were often used in the ancient period to refer to a lot.

Thus, the items that do express plurality in Japanese are different from grammatical number in the sense that added nuances are attributed to particular endings, and these particular endings are used with particular nouns.

Form Note: There are rare instances in Japanese that hint that Japanese did have a clearer distinction of plurality in some words. For instance, ひ becoming か in counters after 1. 1 day used to be ひとひ. Then, 2 days is ふつか. Notice the change? The same thing goes for people. You get ひとり but then ふたり, みたり, よたり. This とり → たり is of the same vein as ひ → か. In fact, there's even an old phrase 日並べて (かなべて) that refers to days one after another.

～たち・達

More frequently written in 漢字 in literature, the suffix ～たち is the closest thing in Japanese to the "-s" in English. However, it typically indicates a group of things. For instance, when you say 石田君たち, 石田君 is pointed out as the head of a group of a multitude of people, which could be his family or his group of friends. Thus, correct interpretation of a phrase with ～たち is heavily sensitive to context.

normal

2. 私たちは賛成します。

We agree.

3. 山田君たち、頭が悪いね。

Yamada's group isn't smart.

4. 理事たちは、大島理事長排斥に手をつけると言った。

The directors said that they would start work on the boycott of Board Chairman Ohshima.
From 混声の森 (下) by 松本清張.

5. 数々のすばらしいヒット曲をまだまだたくさんの方たちに届け続けてほしかったです。

I wanted [her] to still continue delivering many wonderful hit songs to a lot of people.

From the words of the singer 八代亜紀 upon hearing the death of singer 藤圭子.

Another related issue is something like 犬たち. Although this could very well mean “dogs”, depending on context, it could also comprehensively refer to a multitude of all sorts of (similar) animals.

Grammar Note: Unless if something that could be viewed as belonging in a group like a boat in a fleet, plural suffixes are rarely ever used with inanimate nouns.

Word Note: 友達, note the voicing of 〜たち, can still be used even if you are referring to just one friend. This shows how fragile the nuances of these endings are. This is all possible due to the lack of grammatical number. This is of the same vein as 子供, which will be touched on later in this lesson. However, 友たち is possible, which would refer to there being a plurality in friends.

Classical Japanese Note: 〜達 started out as a very respectful suffix used with 神・貴人

きんだち
“aristocrat” (公達 = Kings; children of nobles; nobleman/noblemen). It eventually lessened to being used with light respect, and in Modern Japanese it is no longer honorific. Notice how the ambiguity in plurality has existed when the suffix is voiced.

〜ら・等

〜ら is casual, so it should not be used with わたくし. However, it does get used with わたしら. This, though, is not that common in 標準語. For the most part, both 〜ら and 〜たち attach to basically any pronoun or person noun.

They are also used a lot with 3rd person pronouns, but 彼女ら is oddly not near as common as 彼女たち. To make things more weird, 彼ら is far more common than 彼たち. For nouns of person, ら is the ideal choice in formalized speech. Nothing or たち would be more

normal

6. 私らには分かりません。

We don't understand.

7. 夏は、私らみたいな、いわゆる家出少女が溢れる季節だ。

Summer is a season where so-called runaway girls like us overflow.

From 冷たい誘惑 by 乃南アサ.

8. 僕らは強くないさ。

We aren't strong.

〜ら also attaches to これ, それ, and あれ. However, it is not actual obligatory to express these words in a plural sense.

9. これらをXと呼びます。

We call these X.

10. これらの手掛かりを繋ぎ合わせてみよう。

Let's try to link these clues together.

漢字 Note: This suffix is also sometimes spelled as 等.

〜ども・共

Rarely written in 漢字, the suffix 〜ども is typically used as a humble plural marker for pronouns. For instance, わたくしども is quite common for “we” in this group sense. It may also be used to refer to groups condescendingly. So, you can see it with わたくし, やつ, 手前, etc. It should not be used 僕, あなた or titles such as 先生^{せんせい}.

11. 私どもにお任せください。

Please leave it to us.

12. 野郎ども (You have seen nothing)

Bastards

13. 自分のことを男は「俺」ということが多いが、俺共は「オレドー・オイドー」になり単数に使われることも多い。

Men often call themselves "ore", but "us" becomes, "oredō/oidō", and these are used a lot for the singular.

Dialect Note: This sentence comes from 大分方言 by 高田和彦. 俺共 is a rather interesting combination, but 俺 is being used in a more casual sense while being qualified with 共 to be

normal what humble. In this dialect, the dialectical form of 俺共 ends up becoming singular

again, which happens in 子供 too.

14. 「^{むらびと}邑人^{なが}どもには^{とうじ}わたしが永の病で湯治に来たといつわっていたのだ。．．．」
The villagers are lying that I've come to get a hot-spring cure for an eternal illness.

From ^{かるのみこ}軽王子と^{そとおりひめ}衣通姫 by 三島由紀夫.

In older Japanese, ～ども can be seen with 事. Thus, you get 事ども. Another well studied example of ～ども is 子供・子ども. The character for it in 子供 is あて字. However, again, the problem about 子供 is that it is usually used in the singular sense. Thus, the suffix has lost its original meaning. Thus, you often see 子どもたち.

～がた・方

～がた is a very polite plural suffix that denotes a high status. One of the most common examples is 方々, from which it came. Thus, it is often spelling in 漢字 as 方. It is **not** compatible with first person pronouns, degrading second person pronouns, or titles that suggest a lower status. It may be used with words such as 先生 meaning "teacher" and ^{みなさま}皆様 meaning "everyone".

Pronouns and Pluralization

The following pronouns in their plural forms are listed from most formal to least formal.

1st	私共	我々	我ら	わたくし たち	私[達・ ら]	僕[達・ ら]	あたし[た ち・ら]	俺[たち・ ら]
2nd	皆様 (が た)	皆さ ん	み(ん) な	あなたが た	あなた たち	君[達・ ら]	あんた[た ち・ら]	お前[た ち・ら]
3rd	彼達	彼女 達	彼ら	彼女ら				

Speech Note: みんな is casual. みな also has the form 皆々様, which is a more emphatic yet very honorific form used a lot in New Years cards, 年賀状, and other situations when honorific speech is expected.

15. 私^{こういち}たちは高一です。
We are 10th graders.

16. normal 俺^俺ら^俺はいる。

We're here.

17. 我々の問題^{もんだい}です。
It's our problem.

18. 皆々様のご多幸をお祈り申し上げます。(Very Humble).
I pray that you all may be very fortunate (in the new year).

19. 自分らの手で書いたらしく、下手な字で、行も乱れていた。
It seemed to be written by them, and the handwriting was bad, and the lines were messed up.
From 混声の森 (下) by 松本清張.

Word Note: The use of 自分 refers to a person in the story being accused of a relationship with another person in the academy, and so the reason why the author chose to pluralize 自分 was to refer to the two as a group in a condescending way, though the post being talked about was written by one person.

20. その点われわれも同感です。あるいは、ほかの理事の方に逆効果を与えるかも分かりませんな。
We are sympathetic as well with that point. Perhaps, it may give the opposite effect to the other directors.

Grammar Note: Here, 理事の方 is being used in the plural sense, and this is obvious from context. So, again, remember that although there are plural suffixes in Japanese, you must be aware that in situations such as this and in many instances, using them is not necessary and could at the very worst be wrong.

第94課: Plural *Kosoado* こそあど: *Korera* これら, *Sorera* それら, & *Arera* あれら

In Japanese, pluralization is not grammatically imposed in the way it is in English. It is not that Japanese people do not conceptualize the difference between singular and plural entities. Rather, this distinction rarely needs to be verbalized because the language provides context clues to make such a distinction unnecessary. Of course, this means individual sentences may be ambiguous in this regard if put in isolation, but this would not be reflective of actual conversation.

Nevertheless, there are in fact plural phrases in Japanese. Each means of creating such phrases brings about nuance distinctions unique to each construct. In English, we make the following distinctions in demonstrative words for singular and plural forms.

	Singular Form	Plural Form
normal		

This	These
That	Those
It	They

In this lesson, we'll learn how Japanese usually doesn't explicitly make these distinctions, and when it does how it differs from English.

Vocabulary List

Nouns

- ・リンゴ *Ringo* - Apple
- ・値段 *Nedan* - Price/cost
- ・家族 *Kazoku* - Family
- ・写真 *Shashin* - Picture
- ・オレンジ *Orenji* - Orange
- ・アプリケーション *Apurikēshon* - Application
- ・画面 *Gamen* - Screen
- ・場合 *Ba'ai* - Case/situation/event
- ・国々 *Kuniguni* - Countries
- ・大麻 *Taima* - Hemp/cannabis
- ・テロ *Tero* - Terrorism
- ・対策 *Taisaku* - Measure/provision
- ・強化 *Kyōka* - Enforcement
- ・一環 *Ikkan* - Link
- ・対象 *Taishō* - Target/object
- ・根拠 *Konkyo* - Evidence
- ・情報 *Jōhō* - Information/news

Demonstratives

- ・これ *Kore* - This (noun)
- ・この *Kono* - This (adj.)
- ・これら *Korera* - These
- ・それ *Sore* - That (noun)
- ・その *Sono* - That (adj.)
- ・それら *Sorera* - Those
- ・あれ *Are* - Those (over there)
- ・あの *Ano* - Those (over there)
- ・どれも *Dore mo* - Either/none
- ・それだけ *Sore dake* - Just that
- ・あちら *Achira* - That way/that one/that person

Adverbs

- ・（お）いくつ (*O-ikutsu*) - How many?
- ・いくら *Ikura* - How many?
- ・全て *Subete* - All
- ・初めに *Hajime ni* - Firstly/to begin with
- ・一杯 *Ippai* - Full of

- ・ ミサイル *Misairu* – Missile
- ・ 発射 *Hassha* – Firing/discharge
- ・ 領土 *Ryōdo* – Territory
- ・ 領海 *Ryōkai* – Territorial waters
- ・ 可能性 *Kanōsei* – Possibility
- ・ 避難 *Hinan* – Evacuation
- ・ 呼びかけ *Yobikake* – Call/appeal
- ・ 名前 *Namae* – Name
- ・ 過去 *Kako* – Past
- ・ 履歴 *Rireki* – Background/personal history
- ・ 決まり *Kimari* – Rule/agreement/custom
- ・ 疑問 *Gimon* – Question/doubt
- ・ 改正 *Kaisei* – Revision
- ・ 提案 *Teian* – Proposal
- ・ 町 *Machi* – Town
- ・ 海 *Umi* – Sea/ocean
- ・ 空 *Sora* – Sky
- ・ 満月 *Mangetsu* – Full moon
- ・ 季節 *Kisetsu* – Season(s)
- ・ 電車 *Densha* – (Electric) train
- ・ 公園 *Kōen* – Park
- ・ 遊園地 *Yūenchi* – Amusement park
- ・ 動物 *Dōbutsu* – Animal

normal ・ パー（マーケット） *Sūpā(māketto)* –

- ・ やがて *Yagate* – At last
- ・ 更に *Sara ni* – Furthermore/moreover

Number Phrases

- ・ 二、三個 *Ni, sanko* – Two, three things
- ・ 7か国 *Nanakakoku* – Seven countries
- ・ 一つ *Hitotsu* – One thing
- ・ 一位 *Ichī'i* – First place
- ・ 5人 *Gonin* – Five people
- ・ 三匹 *Sambiki* – Three creatures
- ・ 五つ *Itsutsu* – Five things

Interrogatives

- ・ 何故 *Naze* – Why?
- ・ 誰 *Dare* – Who?

Prefixes

お～ *O-* – Honorific prefix

ご～ *Go-* – Honorific prefix

Suffixes

- ・ ～産 *-san* – Product of
- ・ ～屋 *-ya* – Shop/someone who sells/works as...

Ichidan (ru) Verbs

- ・ 見る *Miru* – To see/look
- ・ 閉じる *Tojiru* – To close
- ・ 伝える *Tsutaeru* – To convey/report/transmit/communicate

Supermarket

- ・おもちゃ *Omocha* – Toy
- ・子 *Ko* – Child
- ・将来 *Shōrai* – Future
- ・こと *Koto* – Thing/event/circumstance/affair
- ・不安 *Fuan* – Anxiety
- ・頭 *Atama* – Head/mind
- ・恋愛 *Ren'ai* – Love/affections
- ・余裕 *Yoyū* – Leeway/margin
- ・机 *Tsukue* – Desk
- ・鉛筆 *Empitsu* – Pencil
- ・中 *Naka* – In(side)/middle
- ・内 *Uchi* – Inside/within/among
- ・サッカー *Sakkā* – Soccer
- ・選手権 *Senshuken* – Championship
- ・人 *Hito* – Person
- ・トランク *Toranku* – Trunk/suitcase
- ・鞆 *Kaban* – Bag/briefcase/basket
- ・山 *Yama* – Mountain
- ・子猫・仔猫 *Koneko* – Kitten
- ・本 *Hon* – Book

Proper Nouns

- ・米国 *Beikoku* – America (country only)

normal リカ *Amerika* – America

- ・流れる *Nagareru* – To stream/flow/be carried
- ・考える *Kangaeru* – To think about/ponder
- ・詰める *Tsumeru* – To stuff into/cram/pack

Godan (u) Verbs

- ・開く *Hiraku* – To open
- ・成る *Naru* – To become
- ・示す *Shimesu* – To demonstrate/indicate
- ・手放す *Tebanasu* – To let go
- ・ある *Aru* – To be/have (inanimate objects)
- ・奪う *Ubau* – To steal
- ・産む *Umu* – To give birth
- ・飼う *Kau* – To raise (an animal)
- ・持っていく *Motte iku* – To take with

Suru Verbs

- ・強調する *Kyōchō suru* – To emphasize
- ・落下する *Rakka suru* – To fall/drop
- ・判断する *Handan suru* – To judge/conclude
- ・申請する *Shinsei suru* – To apply/request

Kuru Verb

- ・来る *Kuru* – To come

Set Phrases

- ・ご入り用 *Go-iriyō* – Need
- ・～下さい *Kudasai* – Please
- ・～について *Ni tsuite* – About

- ・ フランス *Furansu* - France
- ・ ドイツ *Doitsu* - Germany
- ・ トランプ大統領 *Torampu-daitōryō* - President Trump
- ・ 日本 *Nihon/Nippon* - Japan

Adjectives

- ・ 青い *Aoi* - Blue/green/pale
- ・ 高い *Takai* - Tall/expensive
- ・ 美味しい *Oishii* - Delicious
- ・ 多い *Ōi* - Many/a lot
- ・ 無い *Nai* - Nonexistent

Adjectival Nouns

- ・ 他 {の} *Ta/hoka [no]* - Other
- ・ 違法 {な} *Ihō [na]* - Illegal/invalid
- ・ 具体的 {な} *Gutaiteki [na]* - Concrete/tangible
- ・ 緊急 {の・な} *Kinkyū [no/na]* - Urgent/emergency
- ・ 屋内 {の} *Okunai [no]* - Indoor

Adnominal Adjectives

- ・ 大きな *Ōkina* - Large/great

Pronouns

- ・ 私 *Wata(ku)shi* - I
- ・ 彼女 *Kanojo* - She

Plural *Kosoado*こそあど

As English speakers, the forms above are so ingrained into our minds that it is often difficult coping with the seemingly drastically simplified Japanese template. In Japanese, the singular and plural usages of the equivalents of these words are not distinguishable. In other words, they look the same.

1. 「このリンゴを^{くだ}下さい。」 「おい^いくつ^{よう}ご入り用でしょうか。」
“Kono ringo wo kudasai.” “O-ikutsu go-iriyō deshō ka?”
 “Please give me these apples.” “How many is it that you need?”

Orthography Note: *Ringo* may also be seldom spelled as 林檎.

In this exchange, the customer (Speaker A) is physically next to what's presumably an apple stand at a market and is directing attention somehow to a certain kind of apple. If Speaker A were pointing specifically at a certain apple in the bunch, Speaker B (the store clerk) may have potentially asked something else, but just as English speakers use phrases like “I want this one,” Speaker A would have somehow indicated clearly through his/her actions that the one apple was all he/she wanted. With that being the case, if what all Speaker B perceives is that Speaker A wants Aomori Prefecture grown apples, then the next logical question is “how many?” In other words, *kono* この simply replaces the description that would otherwise go with “apple” to merely indicate its position to Speaker A.

normal

In other sentences, we can clearly see how *kono* この can and very frequently stand for “these.”

2. このリンゴは青くて値段が高い。
Kono ringo wa aokute nedan ga takai.
These apples are green and pricey.

Sentence Note: Of course, this sentence could be interpreted in the singular form. Context is everything. If the speaker is holding an apple that he bought from the store and is merely describing it to someone, there’s no reason why the listener would think he’s talking about more than one apple that happen to be present. However, it is logical to think that the statement can be true for apples of that kind. This would make sense especially if the sentence were preceded by something like “This apple from America is delicious.” Saying that would make it sound like he’s now making a general statement about such apples. Now, say the speaker is with someone at a supermarket and happen to go to the produce section and see apples that are both really green and really pricey. In which case, this statement would need to be translated in the plural sense.

3. このリンゴはどれもおいしそう。
Kono ringo wa dore mo oishisō.
Each of these apples looks delicious.

4. これ、いくらですか。
Kore, ikura desu ka?
How much [is this/are these]?

In general conversation, *kore/kono* これ・この, *sore/sono* それ・その, and *are/ano* あれ・あの are used in both the singular and plural sense. These words, as you know, are used in various set phrases with almost the same capacities as their English equivalents and then some. The reason why this is possible is because these words refer collectively to things. If only one thing is part of the collective, then we interpret that in the singular sense. If the collective has more than one thing in it, we just refer to the collective as a whole and interpret that in the plural sense.

5. これは私の家族写真です。
Kore wa watashi no kazoku shashin desu.
[This is a/these are] picture(s) of my family.

6. それだけじゃない。
Sore dake ja nai.
That’s not all.

Using *-ra* ら

It just so happens that *korera* これら, *sorera* それら, and *arera* あれら exist for the plural sense. However, they refer to things at the individual level. This means they can be translated as “(each of) these,” “(each of) those,” “(each of) those (over there).” These words are largely used in the written language unless ignoring the individuality of what “these” and “those” refer to would be illogical. It’s important to note that *arera* あれら is actually not used at all aside from Japanese directly translated from English.

To unpack all this, we will now look at several example sentences utilizing these words so that you can see exactly when they’re used.

7. (2、3個のオレンジを見て) 「これらのオレンジは米国産です。」

(*Ni, sanko no orenji wo mite*) “*Korera no orenji wa beikoku-san desu.*”

(Looking at 2, 3 oranges) “These oranges are America imported.”

Sentence Note: Using *korera* これら instead of *kono* この allows the speaker to emphasize how each of the oranges at the individual level are America imported.

8. ほかのアプリケーション画面を開いている場合、それらをすべて閉じてください。

Hoka no apurikēshon gamen wo hiraite iru ba'ai, sorera wo subete tojite kudasai.

In the case you have other application screens open, please close all of them.

9. アメリカ、フランス、ドイツ、これらの国々では大麻は違法ですか。

Amerika, Furansu, Doitsu, korera no kuniguni de wa taima wa ihō desu ka?

In America, France, Germany, and all these countries, is marijuana illegal?

10. トランプ大統領は、テロ対策強化の一環であることを強調していますが、なぜこれらの7か国が対象となったのか、具体的な根拠は示していません。

Torampu-daitōryō wa, tero taisaku kyōka no ikkan de aru koto wo kyōchō shite imasu ga, naze korera no nanakakoku ga taishō to natta no ka, gutaiteki na konkyo wa shimeshite imasen.

President Trump emphasizes that it is linked to strengthening measures against terrorism, but he hasn’t provided concrete evidence as to why these seven countries became targeted.

11. これらの緊急情報は、はじめに「ミサイル発射情報」が伝えられ、ミサイルが日本の領土・領海に落下する可能性がある判断された場合、「屋内避難の呼びかけ」という情報が流れることになっています。

Korera no kinkyū jōhō wa, hajime ni “misairu hassha jōhō” ga tsutaerare, misairu ga Nihon no ryōdo/ryōkai ni rakka suru kanōsei ga aru to handan sareta ba'ai, “okunai hinan no yobikake” to iu jōhō ga nagareru koto ni natte imasu.

As for these (means of) emergency information, at first “missile launch information” will be transmitted, and in the event that it’s concluded there exists the possibility a missile could come down on Japanese territory/waters, information calling for “indoor evacuation” will play.

12. 名前も過去も履歴も、それらすべてを手放した。

normal

Namae mo kako mo rireki mo, sorera subete wo tebanashita.
My name, my past, my background, I let go of all those things.

Phrase Note: *Korera* これら and *sorera* それら are frequently followed by *subete* すべて. In this situation, you can't drop the /ra/.

13. 決まりに疑問があれば、それも改正提案を申請できる。

Kimari ni gimon ga areba, sore mo kaisei teian wo shinsei dekiru.

If you have any questions about the rules, you can submit them in a reform proposal.

Sentence Note: *Sore* それ is used because there is no context that implies individuality to potential problems with the rule(s) in question.

14. 町も、海も、空も、山も、満月も、季節も、電車も、公園も、遊園地も、動物も、スーパーマーケットも、おもちゃ屋も、私はこの子からそれらをすべて奪ってきたんだ。

Machi mo, umi mo, sora mo, yama mo, mangetsu mo, kisetu mo, densha mo, kōen mo, yūnchi mo, sūpāmāketto mo, omochaya mo, watashi wa kono ko kara sorera wo subete ubatte kita n da.

Towns, the sea, the sky, mountains, the full moon, the seasons, trains, parks, amusement parks, animals, supermarkets, toy stores, I've stolen all those things from this child.

15. 将来のこととか不安が多いよ。これらのことで頭が一杯で、恋愛について考える余裕は無い。

Shōrai no koto toka fuan ga ōi yo. Korera no koto de atama ga ippai de, ren'ai ni tsuite kangaeru yoyū wa nai.

I have a lot of anxiety about the future and all. My mind has been full of these things, and I don't have time to think about love.

16. この机にたくさんの鉛筆があるけど、これらの中から一つだけ持っていったいいよ。

Kono tsukue ni takusan no empitsu ga aru kedo, korera no naka kara hitotsu dake motte itte ii yo.

There are many pencils in this desk, but it is okay for you to take only one out of these with you.

Sentence Note: This first *kono* この can't be interpreted in the plural sense in context.

Although *korera no naka* これらの中 could be rewritten by using *kono* この instead, the individuality of the pencils the listener could choose from would not be emphasized.

17. これらの5人のうち、サッカー世界選手権で一位となった人は誰でしょう。

Korera no gonin no uchi, sakkā sekai senshukun de ichii to natta hito wa dare deshō.

Of these five individuals, who will become number one in the soccer championship?

18. 彼女は猫を三匹飼い出して、これらがやがて子猫を産んだ。

normal *jo wa neko wo sambiki kaidashite, korera ga yagate koneko wo unda.*

She began to raise three cats, and at last these cats have given birth to kittens.

19. トランクが五つあって、それらは更に大きなカバンに詰められて一つになった。
Toranku ga itsutsu atte, sorera wa sara ni ōkina kaban ni tsumerarete hitotsu ni natta.
There were five trunks, and these trunks become one by being crammed into a much larger briefcase.

20. {あちら・あれら ^{やま たか}△} の山は高いですね。
[Achira/arera] no yama wa takai desu ne.
The mountain(s) over there are tall.

Sentence Note: As stated, *arera* あれら doesn't really exist outside the world of translations from Western languages, particularly English. In this sentence, *achira* あちら would be far more natural. Ex. 21 and Ex. 22 are further examples of how *arera* あれら might come about in translated material, but something else will always be what would actually be used.

21. {あれ・あれら ^み} を見てください。
[Are/arera] wo mite kudasai.
Look at those.

22. {あの・あれらの ^{ほん だれ}} 本は誰のですか。
[Ano/arera no] hon wa dare no desu ka?
Whose books are those?

第93課: Pluralization II: ~たち

Japanese is well known for not having an explicitly built-in distinction between the singular and plural forms. This does not mean that Japanese people cannot distinguish between these two concepts. Rather, the way this contrast manifests in Japanese is rather complex. Of course, there are many instances in which the distinction is vague to say the least. Needless to say, it is fair to say that a level of cognitive awareness is needed to not get overly confused.

Note: It's not fair to say that English perfectly distinguishes singular and plural forms, though. After all, we have words like "fish" and deer" that are both. So, thinking about how we overcome such ambiguity in English with these words may help you understand what is going on in Japanese.

～タチの使い方

Overall, there are several methods of pluralization or structures resembling pluralization in Japanese. Consider the following:

normal

1. Noun Repetition

Ex. 山々, 木々, 神々, Etc.

2. Suffixes

-達: 男達、子供達、学生達

-等: 子供等、友人等、彼等、彼女等

-ども: 鬼ども、若造ども、悪漢ども、犬ども、野郎ども

-がた: あなたがた

3. Adding qualifiers to noun phrases:

色々な人, 様々な場所, たくさんの外国人

4. Prefixes to Sino-Japanese Phrase

多文化, 多民族, 諸言語

5. Implied by Certain Verbs and Adjectives

集まる, 散る, 片付ける, 多い

6. Counter phrases

本が10冊ある, 女性が5人いる

This lesson will focus on ～たち as it is arguably the most difficult to master as its necessity is also something that is not straightforward. If it were simply a plural marker, we could just end there, but it isn't.

タチの性質(たち)

Historically, ～たち started out as a suffix for the nobility and the gods, but from this historical note alone, we know that it has never been just for simple pluralization purposes. In fact, when it is used today, whether it is used with nouns of living things or non-living things, it is OK not to use it. However, using ～たち often shows a sense of empathy.

1. 男性（たち）が4人銃で撃たれて病院に搬送された。

Four men were shot and taken to the hospital.

2. 色々な人（たち）が物理学学会に出席した。

A lot of interesting people attended the physics convention.

3. テキサス州の州都、オースティン市には数多くのホームレスの人（たち）がいる。

In Austin, the state capital of Texas, there are many homeless people.

In the next set of sentences, though, ～たち is not optional.

4. 私たちは今年も、全国各地から集まってきました。

We have gathered this year as well from all over the country.

5. 池田さんたち3人は連帯意識が強い。
Ikeda and his group of three have a strong common bond.

6. あなたたちがいないと、私は生きていけないのです。
I can't live on without you all.

The plural meanings of these phrases cannot be supplemented by the basic phrases themselves without ～たち. For phrases like 池田さんたち, one is no longer just using a typical third person pronoun phrase, but as Makino (1996) has stated, but a part of one's 'uchi'. Thus, the term ウチ人称 becomes appropriate.

We continue to see that an emphatic role is present in ～たち's use. It may be clearly obligatory with pronouns, but why? Is it because we have a keen emotional awareness towards the number of pronouns? This is likely the case, and this factor appears to be what controls when ～たち is used regardless of what kind of noun is being used.

Example Sentences

Now it's time to look at example sentences. To be fair and objective, all example sentences will be from Google searches. The reason for this is that example phrases in isolation may be deemed ungrammatical without context, and native speakers themselves may not agree with whether any given expression is used or not.

7. 30年の眠りから^さ覚めた木々たち
These trees which have awoken from a 30 year slumber

8. 不揃い^{ふぞろ}のリンゴたち
Uneven apples

9. その^{かたすみ}の片隅に咲いているバラたちも^か枯れていくのでしょう。
Those roses which have bloomed in the corner will also surely fade away.

10. 遠くの星々たちは誰にも知られずとも^{かがや}輝く。
The stars far away will shine despite being not being known by anyone.

11. 私の住む京の地で、様々な場所から^{とら}捉えた^{さくら}桜たちの^{ひょうじょう}表情^{らん}をご覧ください。
Look at the expressions of cherry blossoms I took from various places at my home place, Kyoto.

12. 奈良公園の鹿達^{な ら こうえん}は^{しかたち}大胆に^{だいたん}道路を^{せんりょう}占領して^{せんりょう}過ごしている！
The deer in Nara Park have boldly taken over the roads!

13. 狐^{きつね} たち^{みや}の宮へ
To the temple of foxes

14. 狸^{たぬき} たち^{ていこう}の抵抗^{はいぼく}と敗北の物語です。
This is a story about the resistance and defeat of the tanuki.

15. 猫^{しゅうだん}たちの集 団^{しゅうだん}がやってきました。
A group of cats have arrived.

16. 雀^{すずめ} たちは一^{いっせい}斉に鳴き始めた。
The sparrows began to cry at once.

17. 我が家^やの 鶏^{にわとり} たち^とを撮^とってみました。
I took pictures of the chickens at my home.

18. 春^{はる}にやって来て繁殖^{はんしよく}する鳥^{なつどり}たちを夏鳥と呼びます。
We call birds who come to reproduce in the spring “summer birds”.

19. 蝉^{せみ}たちが死^しにかけている。
The cicadas are dying.

20. 強風^{きやうふう}に巻き上げられた 蛍^{ほたる} たち^{たち}が光^ひの水^{みづ}しぶきのよう^{よう}に降^ふり注^{そそ}ぐ。
The fireflies caught up in the gale wind are raining down like a mist of light.

21. 池^{いけ}の鯉^{こい}たちが元^{もと}気に泳^{およ}いでいます。
The coy fish in the pond are swimming lively.

22. 高級^{こうき}な日本酒^{にっぽんしゅ}を飲^のみながら、思^{おも}い存^{ぞん}分^{ぶん}魚^{いそ}たちを見^みることができます。
You can watch the fish to one's heart's desire as you drink high class sake.

23. 絵^えのよう^{よう}な雲^{うん}たち
Group of clouds which resemble a painting

24. この雪^{ゆき}たちのよう^{よう}に、溶^とけてなくな^{なくな}ってしま^{しま}って欲^ほしい思^{おも}い出^でたち。
These memories which I wish would melt and disappear like this snow.

A lot of other nouns may require a lot of personification to work. A built-up sense of empathy is needed in such a situation.

25. あたしが大好きな本^{ほん}たちを紹介^{しょうかい}しますわ。
I'm going to introduce you to my precious books!

normal

第96課: 知る VS 分かる

To understand the difference between 知る and 分かる, you have to consider a lot of things. First, there is the basic definition of both and how they differ. There are also fundamental grammatical differences. Let's get started.

Differentiating the Two

First, consider the following basic definitions of 知る and 分かる.

- 知る shows the acquisition of information, knowledge, experience, and in the progressive form, it may show that one has such and or remember a matter.
- 分かる shows true understanding at the level of comprehending the true/actual state of things. It can also mean that one identifies/establishes something as so and or that one has discerned something.

Just from this introductory explanation, we can see that 分かる implies a more serious state of comprehension than 知る.

Consider the difference between よく知らない人 and よく分からない人. The first sounds like it's a person you've not actually been acquainted with and or a mysterious individual from somewhere. The latter sounds like a mysterious person but one you've been acquainted with, or perhaps the person has changed somehow. So, when you go from 未知 (not yet known) to 既知 (already known), you use 知る. Reaching the true essence of this 既知の事実 is within the realm of 分かる. 分かる also implies an effect not involving one's volition.

1. その時に、ラーメンの味を知った。
I was then acquainted with the taste of ramen.
2. ああ、分かった。
Ah, I get it.
3. 出席するかどうか分かりません。
I don't know whether I will attend or not.
4. 検索してみれば分かるよ。
You'll understand once you look it up.

5. 歌詞の意味なんて分からないように出来てるよ。

The meaning of lyrics are crafted so that you don't understand them.

6. 最初から読まないと分からないんだから、悪い日本語だよ。

If you can't understand it without reading from the beginning, it's bad Japanese.

7. 日本語でも何言ってるか分からなくて理解できなかった。

I couldn't comprehend it because I didn't even know what was being said even in Japanese.

8. ^{旦那}旦那が分かってないのに録音してるからって適当に受け答えして帰ってきちゃったの。

Although my husband couldn't understand, he recorded and came home after giving replies.

9. わからない単語があったから辞書を引いたのに、日本語でも英語でも分からないから、笑っちゃった。

Despite looking up words that I didn't know, I laughed with the fact that I don't get the Japanese or the English.

10a. 考えれば、分かります。 ○

10b. 考えれば、知ります。 X

If you think about it, you'll understand.

11. ゴルフやったことないから何のことか分からない。

I've never played golf, so I don't know what that is.

12. ググってフェアウェイとグリーンの違いを知った。

I learned of the difference between a fairway and a green when I googled.

13. 青信号っていう言葉が出来上がっちゃってるから青じゃない場合になんて言ったらいいか分からないや。

Since we have this phrase "aoshingo", even when the light is not blue, I don't know what's best to say.

14. 彼女はその人が日本人であることも知っていたはずなんだけど。

Though she should have known that that person was Japanese.

15. これは本当かどうか分からないけど、ベトナムでも犬を食べる習慣があって、彼らはペットの犬も食べるらしい。

I don't know whether this is true or not, but it seems that there is a tradition even in Vietnam of eating dogs and that they also eat dogs meant as pets.

16. ^{めずら}アメリカではタコも珍しい？知らなかった！

normal

Octopus is also rare in America? I had no idea!

分かる is intransitive in Japanese and so you must use が to mark what in English would be the direct object. However, you do occasionally see を分かる due to Western influence. Nevertheless, other things like わかりたい, わかられる, and わかりえる are wrong with only 分かりたい being sometimes acceptable as a more emphatic way of saying 知りたい, which to some speakers is still just wrong.

17a. 日本語が分かりたい。？

17b. 日本語を理解したい。○
I want to know Japanese.

18. 分かりたいなら、よく調べなさい。
If you really want to know, go look into it.

知る can be conjugated into forms such as 知りたい, 知られる, and 知り得る, but it has a tense restriction that 分かる does not have. Asking 知りますか would be very weird. It would mean that you're asking whether someone is responsive to information, which would be very weird to ask another human being. You can, though, use 分かりますか to ask about comprehension. 知っていますか is perfectly fine for asking whether someone knows something. So, if you were to ask 「大統領を知っていますか」, the person is asking whether you know anything about the president. 知っていない is almost always wrong, but saying it is always impossible is a fallacy that will be addressed in depth shortly in this lesson.

19. もっと深く知りたい。
I want to know deeper about it.

ちょうせんはんとう じじょう
20. 朝鮮半島の事情をよく知ることが大切です。
It's important to know well of the conditions in the Korean Peninsula.

Finally, it's important to quickly think of the difference between 知っている and 分かっている.

- 知っている: Shows that you are in the state of keeping hold of some knowledge about something.
- 分かっている: Shows that you are in the state of knowing the true essence of something.

21. 知っていますが、今はちょっと分かりません。
I know of it, but I don't actually know it at the moment.

normal

22. 差別と区別すら解ってない。

(He/someone) doesn't even understand the difference between "discrimination" and "differentiating".

知らない VS 知っていない

The standard negative form of 知っている is 知らない. However, 知っていない does exist. 知っていない often appears whenever the affirmative and negative of 知っている are contrasted. 知っていない is possible when the negative is being used for affirmative conjecture, which we've seen already before with things like じゃないか, 遊びに行かない? It's also possible in the following contrast.

知っている + ば → 知っていなければ = If you don't know

知らない + ば → 知らなければ = If you don't realize

Essentially, 知らない denotes attention to a static condition of not knowing whereas 知っていない denotes attention to the completeness of knowing in the negative sense. 知っていない is inconstant and denotes an objective view from the outside in regards to a lack of knowledge, which is exactly why students are rightfully told they are wrong when they try to apply it as meaning "I don't know". 知らない involves denoting a lack of knowledge from the inward perspective of the thing at hand.

There are still instances when 知っていない is seen, but it is almost completely avoided. The single instance where it is in imperative is still used, but many simply avoid it as there are synonymous phrases like 理解できない and 腑に落ちていない. Derivatives are most common, which is the most important thing to keep in mind.

23a. 知っていても知っていなくても ○

23b. 知っていても知らなくても ○

Even if you do or do not know

24. そのことを知っているか否かではない。

It's not whether [they] know or do not know that.

Grammar Note: Notice how in this situation the use of 知っていない is avoided by using 否.

25a. 知っていようが知っていなからうが ○

25b. 知っていようが知らなからうが ○

Whether you know or not

26. この問題は、日本語を知らなければ答えられない。??

Intended: If you don't know Japanese, you can't answer this question.

27. この試験に合格するためには、日本語をよく知らなければならない。X

Intended: In order to pass this exam, you must know Japanese well.

Otherwise, 知っていない is probably a mistake or dialectical because there are dialects where the same thing is acceptable.

28. 「田中君はこのことについて、何か知っていたか」「いや、まだ何も知っていませんでした」○

"What did Tanaka know about this? "No, he still didn't know anything."

第97課: Counters V: 文字, クラス, 品, 桁, 切れ, 玉, 房, 株, 袋, 箱, 棟, 組み, 皿, 束, & 通り

In previous lessons, we learned about the native numbers that are still used a lot in Modern Japanese. As a recap, here are these numbers once more.

1	Hito ひと	2	Futa ふた	3	Mi み	4	Yo(n) よ (ん)
5	Itsu いつ	6	Mu む	7	Nana なな	8	Ya や
9	Kokono ここの	10	Tō とお	?	Iku いく		

Usage Note: The use of *iku*- いく to create "how many..." phrases with native counters is limited to set phrases and/or neo-classical grammar. As such, you will not see it in the charts of this lesson.

When you strip away *-tsu* つ, you get the actual numbers. These numbers are used most with native vocabulary. However, they are not restricted to native vocabulary. Oddly enough, though, for the counters they're used with, they're hardly used to their full extent. Many counters only use the numbers for 1-3 or even just 1-2. This isn't all that surprising considering how the native number system is practically limited to 1-10. In this lesson, you will formally be introduced to counters that involve native numbers for the first time. The ones to be covered in this lesson are as follows.

Counters Covered in this Lesson

1. *-(mo)ji* (文) 字
2. *-kurasu* クラス
3. *-shinal-hin* 品

normal

4. -keta 桁
5. -kire 切れ
6. -tama 玉
7. -fusa 房
8. -kabu 株
9. -fukuroi-tai 袋
10. -hako 箱
11. -munel-tō 棟
12. -kumi 組み
13. -sara 皿
14. -tabal-soku 束
15. -tōri 通り

Lesson Note: Just as in prior lessons on counters, reading charts will have readings listed from most to least used. The most used variant will be in bold.

Native Numbers + Counters

-moji 文字 & -ji 字

If you are instructed to write a report within 300 characters, you will likely use a word processor and see how many characters—with or without spaces—are in what you've written. This would include punctuation marks and any other non-letter symbols. If you were instead instructed to write a report within 300 letters, you would interpret this to mean not including non-letter symbols. Therefore, that extra comma won't make you go over like it would in a Twitter post.

In Japanese, this same distinction is made by having two separate counters for “characters” and “letters.” They also conveniently correspond to the actual words for these things. To count characters, you use *-ji* 字. To count letters *Kanji* 漢字 and *Kana* かな, you use *-moji* 文字. Of these two counters, only *-moji* 文字 uses more native numbers by using them for 1, 2, 4, and 7.

-ji 字

1	いちじ	2	にじ	3	さんじ	4	よんじ
5	ごじ	6	ろくじ	7	ななじ	8	はちじ
9	きゅうじ	10	じゅうじ	100	ひゃくじ	?	なんじ

-moji 文字

normal

1	ひともじ	2	ふたもじ	3	さんもじ	4	よんもじ
5	ごもじ	6	ろくもじ	7	ななもじ	8	はちもじ
9	きゅうもじ	10	じゅうもじ	100	ひゃくもじ	?	なんもじ

じすうせいげん いちまんじ かくだい
 1. 字数制限を1万字に拡大しました。
Jisū seigen wo ichimanji ni kakudai shimashita.
 I/we expanded the character limit to 10,000 characters.

ないよう えいご ひゃくじ まと
 2. その内容を英語の100字で纏めてください。
Sono naiyō wo eigo no hyakuji de matomete kudasai.
 Please summarize the content in 100 English characters.

えいご ようび つき さんもじ しょうりやく か
 3. 英語では、曜日や月を3文字で省略して書くことがあります。
Eigo de wa, yōbi ya tsuki wo sammoji wo shōryaku shite kaku koto ga arimasu.
 In English, you often abbreviate the days of the week and the months to three letters when writing.

いっぶん よ さんびやくもじ
 4. 1分で読める300文字
Ippun de yomeru sambyakumoji
 300 letters that can be read in a minute

-kurasu クラス

The counter *-kurasu* クラス is used to count school classes. Oddly enough, it usually utilizes the native words for 1 and 2, which is unlike the other counters we've encountered thus far. However, as is the case with many counters with which these native numbers are possible, they're not imperative with クラス.

1	ひとくらす いちくらす	2	ふたくらす にくらす	3	さんくらす	4	よんくらす
5	ごくらす	6	ろっくらす ろくくらす	7	ななくらす	8	はちくらす

9	きゅうくらす	10	じゅっくらす じっくらす	?	なんくらす		
---	--------	----	-----------------	---	-------	--	--

5. 皆みなさんのお子こさんが通かよう小しょうがっこう学校なんは何クラスありますか。
Mina-san no o-ko-san ga kayou shōgakkō wa nankurasu arimasu ka?
 How many classes do the elementary schools that everyone's children go to have?

6. 私わたしは私立しりつこうこう高校じゅうごですが、15 クラスあります。
Watashi wa shiritsu kōkō desu ga, jūgokurasu arimasu.
 I (go to) a public school, but there are/I have fifteen classes.

Counter Note: When referring to individual home rooms, the counter *-gakkyū* 学級 may be used instead. There are no sound changes with this counter.

-hin/-shina 品 (ひん・しな)

The counter *-hin/-shina* 品 counts “dishes of food.” For the most part, either set of readings are permissible. However, in the restaurant business, the *-shina* しな readings are preferred. This is largely because *ippin* 一品 (1 dish/item) is homophonous with *ippin* 逸品 (rarity/excellent article). In set phrases, however, there is no flexibility as to which set of readings is used.

• -hin ひん

1	いっぴん	2	にひん	3	さんびん さんひん	4	よんひん
5	ごひん	6	ろっぴん	7	ななひん	8	はっぴん はちひん
9	きゅうひん	10	じゅっぴん じっぴん	100	ひゃっぴん	?	なんびん

• -shina しな

1	ひとしな	2	ふたしな	3	みしな	4	よしな よんしな
---	------	---	------	---	-----	---	-------------

5	ごしな いつしな	6	ろくしな むしな	7	ななしな	8	はっしな はちしな やしな
9	きゅうしな ここのしな	10	じゅっしな じっしな としな	100	ひゃくしな	?	なんしな

Reading Note: *-shina* 品 is one of a handful of counters where many speakers remain acutely aware of the traditional readings for 1-10. These speakers tend to use native numbers for the entirety of the 1-10 series. However, they are in the minority. For most speakers, native numbers are not used after 4 with exception to 7.

ふたしなくだ
7. これとこれを二品下さい。
Kore to kore wo futashina kudasai.
Please give me these two.

とうふりょうり じゅっ つく
8. お豆腐料理を 10 品作りました。
O-tōfu ryōri wo juppin/jusshina tsukurimashita.
I made 10 tofu dishes.

いっぴんりょうり ちゅうもん
9. 一品料理を注文しました。
Ippin ryōri wo chūmon shimashita.
I ordered à la carte.

-keta 桁

The counter *-keta* 桁 counts numerical digits.

1	ひとけた	2	ふたけた	3	みけた さんけた	4	よけた よんけた
5	ごけた	6	ろけた	7	ななけた	8	はっけた はちけた
9	きゅうけた	10	じゅっけた じっけた	100	ひゃっけた	?	なんけた

したみけた しーごーろく
10. 下3桁は 456 です。
normal *miketa wa shii gō roku desu.*

The last three digits are 456.

Pronunciation Note: When reading out numbers, 4 and 5 are typically pronounced with long vowels as seen in Ex. 10.

ねだん ひとけた み まちが
11. 値段を一桁（見）間違えました。
Nedan wo hitoketa (mi)machigaemashita.
I mistook the price by one digit.

ふたけたまんえん とけい よ じっかん
12. 二桁万円の時計の良さを実感しました。
Futaketaman'en no tokei no yosa wo jikkan shimashita.
I really felt the merit of a watch in the six-figure range.

Word Note: Because *man* 万 means “ten thousand,” *futaketaman* 二桁万 refers to any value between 100,000 and 999,999.

-kire 切れ

The counter *-kire* 切れ counts slices.

1	ひときれ	2	ふたきれ	3	みきれ さんきれ	4	よんきれ よきれ
5	ごきれ	6	ろっきれ	7	ななきれ	8	はちきれ はっきれ
9	きゅうきれ	10	じゅっきれ じっきれ	100	ひゃっきれ	?	なんきれ

ふた き はさ
13. サンドイッチにチーズを2切れ挟みます。
Sandoitchi ni chiizu wo futakire hasamimasu.
(I'll) put two slices of cheese in the sandwich.

ちょうなん ひと き き わ
14. 長男にケーキを1切れ切り分けてあげました。
Chōnan ni kēki wo hitokire kiriwakete agemashita.
I cut my oldest son a piece of cake.

さけ じゅっ き き み い
15. 鮭を10切れの切り身にして、パック入りにしました。
Sake wo jukkire no kirimi ni shite, pakku-iri ni shimashita.
I cut the salmon into ten slices and packed them.

-tama 玉

The counter *-tama* 玉 is used to count spherical food items such as tomatoes (*tomato* トマト), heads of lettuce (*retasu* レタス), melons (メロン), watermelons (*suika* スイカ), garlic (*nin'niku* ニンニク), cabbage (*kyabetsu* キャベツ), onions (*tamanegi* 玉葱), portions of noodles such as udon (*udon* うどん), etc.

1	ひとつたま	2	ふたたま	3	さんたま・みたま	4	よんたま・よたま
5	ごたま	6	ろくたま	7	ななたま	8	はちたま
9	きゅうたま	10	じゅうたま じったま	100	ひゃくたま	?	なんたま

16. 大きめのメロンを1玉買いました。
Ōkime no meron wo hitotama kaimashita.
I bought one large-sized melon.

17. あの象はスイカを2玉丸ごと食べましたよ。
Ano zō wa suika wo futatama marugoto tabemashita yo.
That elephant ate two watermelons whole.

Spelling Note: *Suika* is frequently spelled as 西瓜.

18. 生うどんを5玉買いました。
Nama udon wo gotama kaimashita.
I bought five things of fresh udon.

Spelling Note: *Udon* is only seldom spelled as 饅頭.

19. ハワイ産のパパイアを3玉売りました。
Hawai-san no papaiya wo mitama urimashita.
I sold three papayas from Hawaii.

-fusa 房

The counter *-fusa* 房 counts produce that are in bunches like grapes (*budō* ブドウ) or bananas (*banana* バナナ).

1	ひとふさ	2	ふたふさ	3	みふさ さんふさ	4	よんふさ
5	ごふさ	6	ろくふさ	7	ななふさ	8	はちふさ
9	きゅうふさ	10	じゅうふさ とふさ	100	ひゃくふさ	?	なんふさ

20. 店に、1房に8本付いたバナナを1房100円で20房仕入れました。
Mise ni, hitofusa ni hapon tsuita banana wo hitofusa hyakuen de nijūfusa shiiremashita.
 For the store, I procured 20 bunches of bananas for 100 yen per bunch with 8 bananas in each bunch.

21. 器にミカンを2房入れました。
Utsuwa ni mikan wo futafusa iremashita.
 I put two bunches of mandarin oranges into the bowl.

Spelling Note: *Mikan* is occasionally spelled as 蜜柑.

22. 青いブドウを3房冷蔵庫に入れました。
Aoi budō wo mifusa reizōko ni iremashita.
 I put three bunches of green grapes into the refrigerator.

Spelling Note: *Budō* is only seldom spelled as 葡萄.

-kabu 株

The counter **-kabu 株** can count heads of produce such as cabbage (*kyabetsu* キャベツ), Chinese cabbage (*hakusai* 白菜), broccoli (*burokkorii* ブロッコリー), cauliflower (*karifurawā* カリフラワー), or bok choy (*chingensai* チンゲン菜), spinach (*hōrensō* ほうれん草), Japanese mustard spinach (*komatsuna* 小松菜), etc. connected at the stem, or stocks as in the stock exchange (*kabushiki shijō* 株式市場).

1	ひとかぶ	2	ふとかぶ	3	みかぶ さんかぶ	4	よんかぶ よかぶ
5	ごかぶ	6	ろっかぶ ろくかぶ	7	ななかぶ	8	はちかぶ はっかぶ
9	きゅうかぶ	10	じゅっかぶ じっかぶ	100	ひゃっかぶ	?	なんかぶ

normal

ひとかぶはちまんえん かぶ ろっかぶ か

23. 1株8万円の株を6株買いました。

Hitokabu hachiman'en no kabu wo rokkabu kaimashita.

I bought six stocks for 80,000 yen a piece.

じかせい たんたんめん さい ふたかぶはい た

24. 自家製の坦々麺にチンゲン菜を2株入れて食べました。

Jikasei no tantanmen ni chingensai wo futakabu irete tabemashita.

I added two things of bok choy into the homemade dandan noodles I ate.

そう みかぶしゅうかく

25. ほうれん草を3株収穫しました。

Hōrensō wo mikabu shūkaku shimashita.

I harvested three bundles of spinach.

-fukuro/-tai 袋

The counter *-fukuro/-tai* 袋 counts bagfuls. The former reading is more colloquial, but the latter reading is used as the proper unit in industrial/business settings. This counter is frequently used with words like tea (*ocha* お茶), cement (*semento* セメント), wheat flower (*komugiko* 小麦粉), etc.

• *-fukuro* ふくろ

1	ひとつくろ	2	ふたふくろ	3	みふくろ	4	よふくろ
5	ごふくろ いつふくろ	6	ろくふくろ ろっふくろ	7	ななふくろ	8	はちふくろ はっふくろ
9	きゅうふくろ	10	じゅっふくろ じっふくろ とふくろ	100	ひゃっふくろ ひゃくふくろ	?	なんふくろ

• *-tai* たい

1	いったい	2	にたい	3	さんたい	4	よんたい
5	ごたい	6	ろくたい ろったい	7	ななたい	8	はちたい はったい
9	きゅうたい	10	じゅったい じったい	100	ひゃくたい ひゃったい	?	なんたい

いた たまねぎ hitofukuroi
26. 炒め玉葱を一袋入れました。
Itame-tamanegi wo hitofukuro iremashita.
I put in a bagful of sautéed onions.

hitofukurota
27. ポテチを一袋食べました。
Potechī wo hitofukuro tabemashita.
I ate a bag of potato chips.

do hyaku ta
28. 土のうを100袋くらい貯めています。
Donō wo hyakutai/hyakufukuro kurai tamete imasu.
We have about 100 sandbags stored.

Spelling Note: *Donō* is seldom spelled as 土嚢.

-hako 箱

The counter *-hako* 箱 counts boxes. It itself is the noun for box. Its readings are in flux, but focus on the ones that are most common. This counter is one of a handful of native counters with which native speakers are more likely to be acutely aware of the traditional readings for it. The native series is possible for 1-10, but it is rare for a speaker to follow the entire series.

1	ひとはこ いっぽこ	2	ふたはこ にはこ	3	さんぱこ さんはこ みはこ さんぱこ	4	よんはこ よんぱこ よはこ
5	ごはこ いつはこ	6	ろっぱこ ろくはこ むはこ	7	ななはこ	8	はっぱこ はちはこ やはこ
9	きゅうはこ ここのはこ	10	じゅっぱこ じゅうはこ じっぱこ とはこ	100	ひゃっぱこ ひゃくはこ	?	せんぱこ せんはこ
1万	いちまんはこ いちまんぱこ						

すほんつこ
29. 好きな本を一箱に詰め込みました。
normal

Suki na hon wo ippako/hitohako ni tsumekomimashita.
I crammed the books I liked into one box.

かれ いちにち
30. 彼は一日にタバコを {2箱・2パック} 吸っている。
Kare wa ichinichi ni tabako wo [futahako/nipakku] sutte iru.
He smokes/two packs of cigarettes a day.

Counter Notes: The counter *-pakku* パック counts packs. For the number 1, it can be used with the forms “*ichi* いち,” “*ip* いっ,” “*hito* ひと,” and “*wan* ワン.” For 2, it can be used with “*ni* に,” “*futa* ふた,” and “*tsū* ツー.” For other numbers, it behaves just like the counter *-pēji* ページ. Also, the counter phrase *ichinichi* 一日 uses the counter *-nichi* 日 which counts days. This counter will be looked at later in IMABI.

ひ こ だん ばこ じゅうばこ はっそう
31. 引っ越しで段ボール箱を10箱くらい発送しました。
Hikkoshi de dambōrubako wo juppako kurai hassō shimashita.
I shipped about ten cardboard boxes in moving.

-munel-tō 棟

The counter *-munel-tō* 棟 counts buildings. Historically, only the former reading existed. Nowadays, many people use the latter reading when counting very large structures like high-rises and use the former for any smaller sized building. This, though, is not set in stone. In the news, only *-mune* むね is used. This practice is commonly seen in all kinds of formal situations. In the spoken language, *-mune* むね is still largely the reading of choice. However, a decent minority still use *-tō* とう instead, especially when referring to large buildings.

• *-mune* むね

1	ひとむね	2	ふたむね	3	さんむね	4	よんむね
5	ごむね	6	ろくむね	7	ななむね	8	はちむね
9	きゅうむね	10	じゅうむね	100	ひゃくむね	?	なんむね

• *-tō* とう

1	いっとう	2	にとう	3	さんとう	4	よんとう
5	ごとう	6	ろくとう	7	ななとう	8	はちとう はっとう

9	きゅうとう	10	じゅっとう じっとう	100	ひゃくとう ひゃっとう	?	なんとう
---	-------	----	---------------	-----	----------------	---	------

32. 住宅1棟が全焼しました。
じゅうたくひとむね ぜんしょう
Jūtaku hitomune ga zenshō shimashita.
 One home burned down.

33. マンションが10棟立ち並んでいる。
た なら
Manshon ga jūmune/juttō tachinarande iru.
 Ten apartment complexes are lined in a row.

34. 菊川はオフィスビル3棟を所有している。
きくかわ さんむね しょう
Kikukawa wa ofisu biru sammune wo shoyū shite iru.
 Kikukawa owns three office buildings.

-kumi 組み

The counter *-kumi* 組み counts sets of something as well as what “class” one is in in school. In Japan, homerooms will be referred to by #組. For this latter meaning, it is spelled without み. This spelling is also used when it counts “groups of people.”

1	ひとつみ	2	ふたくみ	3	さんくみ みくみ	4	よんくみ
5	ごくみ	6	ろくくみ	7	ななくみ	8	はっくみ はちくみ
9	きゅうくみ	10	じゅっくみ じっくみ	100	ひゃくくみ	?	なんくみ

35. コーヒー茶碗一組を購入しました。
ちやわんひとく こうにゅう
Kōhijawan hitokumi wo kōnyū shimashita.
 I purchased a coffee cup set.

Reading Note: 茶碗 can also be read as “*chawan* ちやわん.”

Spelling Note: *Kōhii* is only seldom spelled as 珈琲.

じゅっ さんくみ わ
 36. 10 チームを 3 組に分けました。
Jutchiimu wo sankumi/mikumi ni wakemashita.
 I split ten teams into three groups.

Counter Note: The counter *-chiimu* チーム counts “teams.” For 1, you can use “*it* 一つ” or “*hito* ひと.” For 2, you can use “*ni* に” or “*futa* ふた.” For other numbers, it behaves like *-tō* 頭.

わたし さんくみ
 37. 私 は 3 組です。
Watashi wa sankumi desu.
 I’m in Class 3.

-sara 皿

The counter *-sara 皿* is used to count plates of food. When plates don’t have any food on them, however, the counter *-mai* 枚 should be used instead. Incidentally, the word for plate is *sara 皿*.

1	ひとさら	2	ふたさら	3	みさら さんさら	4	よんさら
5	ごさら	6	ろくさら	7	ななさら	8	はっさら はちさら
9	きゅうさら	10	じゅっさら じっさら	100	ひゃくさら	?	なんさら

わたし あぶ にぎ ず し じゅうろくさらた
 38. 私 は炙りサーモンの握り寿司を 16 皿食べきりました。
Watashi wa aburisāmon no nigirizushi wo jūrokusara tabekirimashita.
 I completely ate 16 plates of seared salmon nigirizushi.

ひゃくえん かいてんずし はっさらた
 39. きょう、100円の回転寿司を 8 皿食べましたよ。
Kinō, hyakuen no kaitenzushi wo hassara tabemashita yo.
 I ate eight plates of 100-yen conveyor belt sushi yesterday.

かいてんずしてん す し なんさらた おお
 40. 回転寿司店で寿司を何皿食べることが多いですか。
Kaitenzushi-ten de sushi wo nansara taberu koto ga ōi desu ka?
 How many plates of sushi do you eat the most at conveyor belt sushi restaurants?

41. お持ち帰りの方はエビ天巻を10 {皿分・貫} 注文しました。
O-mochikaeri no kata wa ebiten-maki wo [jussara-bun/jukkan] chūmon shimashita.
 The person ordering takeout ordered 10 plates worth/10 pieces of shrimp tempura rolls.

Counter Note: The counter *-kan* 貫 counts pieces of sushi. Its sound changes are the same as *-kabu* 株.

-taba 束

The counter *-taba* 束 counts leafy vegetables (*yōsairui* 葉菜類/*ha(mono)yasai* 葉(物)野菜 /*inappa* 菜っ葉) that are in bundles. It may also be read as *-soku* そく, but this reading tends to be used to indicate quantities of a hundred for vegetables, bamboo (*take* 竹), rice plants (*ine* 稲), firewood (*makitakigi* 薪), etc. This comes from bundles being treated as units of ten and *-soku* そく being ten of those bundles. Not all speakers know this, but this distinction is still used in several industries. Because different places can assign different numerical values to how much a 束 is, it is usually always stated how much one is.

• *-taba* たば

1	ひとつたば	2	ふたたば	3	みたば さんたば	4	よんたば
5	ごたば	6	ろくたば	7	ななたば	8	はちたば
9	きゅうたば	10	じゅったば じったば	100	ひゃくたば	?	なんたば

• *-soku* そく

1	いっそく	2	にそく	3	さんそく さんそく	4	よんそく
5	ごそく	6	ろくそく	7	ななそく	8	はっそく
9	きゅうそく	10	じっそく じゅっそく	100	ひゃくそく	?	なんそく なんそく

42. このお味噌汁1杯で、ほうれん草1束分の鉄分が摂れます。
Kono o-misoshiru ippai de, hōrensō hitotaba-bun no tetsubun ga toremasu.
 You can get the iron content of a bundle of spinach with one cup of this miso soup.

normal

ぎょうむよう あじつ の り ひやくたばはっちゅう
 43. 業務用の味付け海苔を100束発注しました。
Gyōmu-yō ajitsuke nori wo hyakusoku hatchū shimashita.
 I put in an order for 100 bundles of business use, seasoned nori.

なが にほん みず なひとたば なべ ひとふくろ ず すこ つく
 44. 長ネギ2本と、水菜1束、鍋つゆ1袋、ポン酢少しで作りました。
Naganegi nihon to, mizuna hitotaba, nabetsuyu hitofukuro, ponzu sukoshi de tsukurimashita.
 I made it with two Japanese leeks, one bundle of potherb mustard, a bag of hot pot soup, and a little ponzu sauce.

Counter Note: Long items like leeks are counted with *-hon* 本, which will be looked in greater detail later in IMABI.

した しゃしん ひた しゅんぎくみたばぶん
 45. 下の写真のお浸しで春菊3束分です！
Shita no shashin no ohitashi de shungiku mitaba-bun desu!
 In the ohitashi in the picture below, there is three bundles worth of edible chrysanthemum!

Culture Note: *Ohitashi* is boiled greens like spinach, mustard spinach, edible chrysanthemum, etc.

-tōri 通り

The counter *-tōri* 通り counts ways. The phrase *hitotōri* ひとつとおり is not only used to mean “one way/method,” but it also means “in general/generally/roughly.”

1	ひとつとおり	2	ふたとおり にとおり	3	さんとお みとお	4	よんとお
5	ごとお	6	ろくとお	7	ななとお	8	はちとお
9	きゅうとお	10	じゅうとお じっとおり	100	ひゃくとお	?	なんとお

ひつよう どうぐ ひとつお そろ
 46. 必要な道具は一通り揃っています。
Hitsuyō na dōgu wa hitotōri sorotte imasu.
 There's a full lineup of needed tools/instruments.

だいがくじゅけん ひとつお お
 47. 大学受験が一通り終わりました。
Daigaku juken ga hitotōri owarimashita.
 I'm generally done with taking my college exams.

よ ふたとお じゆくご そんざい
 normal 読みが2通りある熟語がたくさん存在します。

Yomi ga futatōri aru jukugo ga takusan sonzai shimasu.
There are many compound words that have two readings.

さんとお だんせい さそ かた しょうかい
49. 3通りの男性の誘い方を紹介していきます。
Santōri no dansei no sasoikata wo shōkai shite ikimasu.
I am going to introduce to you three ways to lure men.

く あ なんとお おし
50. 組み合わせは何通りあるか教えてください。
Kumiawase wa nantōri aru ka oshiete kudasai.
Please tell me how many combinations there are.

第98課: Counters VI: 羽, 部, 戸, 発, 軒, 人前, 丁, 本, 点, 泊, 通, 尾, 駅, 億, & 兆

In this lesson on counters, we will learn about fifteen more counters used very frequently. With a total of fifteen more counters in your repertoire, you'll be closer to properly counting most of what you'd need to count in daily conversation.

Counters Covered in this Lesson

1. -wa 羽
2. -bu 部
3. -ko 戸
4. -hatsu 発
5. -ken 軒
6. -nimmae 人前
7. -chō 丁
8. -hon 本
9. -ten 点
10. -haku 泊
11. -tsū 通
12. -bi 尾
13. -eki 駅
14. -oku 億
15. -chō 兆

Counter expressions, when there are multiple readings, are listed from most to least common. Options are put in bold to mark the most commonly used form whenever there is ambiguity concerning this.

More Sino-Japanese Counters

-wa 羽

The counter -wa 羽 counts birds and rabbits. This includes large birds and small birds that don't fly such as ostriches and penguins. However, large birds are sometimes counted with -tō 頭.

Rabbits can alternatively be counted with -hiki 匹 but can be counted with -wa 羽 due to being treated as rabbits in traditional Buddhist beliefs so that their meat along with poultry wouldn't be outlawed.

1	いちわ	2	にわ	3	さんわ さんば	4	よんわ よんば
5	ごわ	6	ろっば ろくわ	7	ななわ しちわ	8	はちわ はっぱ
9	きゅうわ	10	じゅっば じゅうわ じっぱ	100	ひゃっば ひゃくわ	1000	せんば せんわ
10000	いちまんば いちまんわ	?	なんわ なんば				

Reading Note: There are some expressions with set readings that utilize one reading over other options (Ex. 千羽鶴^{せんばづる}: String of 1000 paper cranes).

1. ニワトリ^あ合わせて 68 羽^{ろくじゅうわ}が死^しんでいるのが見^みつかりました。
Niwatori awasete rokujūhachiwa ga shinde iru no ga mitsukarimashita.
A total of 68 chickens were found dead.

Spelling Note: *Niwatori* is occasionally spelled as 鷄.

2. 電線^{でんせん}に鳥^{とり}が 10 羽^{じゅっば}止^とまっていたました。
Densen ni tori ga juppa tomatte imashita.
Ten birds were stopped on the electric lines.

3. カモメ^{ろっば}が 6 羽^{なら}並^とんで止^とまっていたました。
Kamome ga roppa narande tomatte imashita.
There were six seagulls stopped and lined up together.

Spelling Note: Kamome is occasionally spelled as 鷗・鷗.

たてもものよこ ほり さん わ
4. 建物横の堀には、アヒルが3羽いました。

Tatemono yoko no hori ni wa, ahiru ga sanwa imashita.

There were three ducks in the ditch on the side of the building.

Spelling Note: *Ahiru* is only seldom spelled as 家鴨.

-bu 部

The counter *-bu* 部 counts copies of printed materials such as magazines and newspapers. It may also count packets of paper.

1	いちぶ	2	にぶ	3	さんぶ	4	よんぶ
5	ごぶ	6	ろくぶ	7	ななぶ	8	はちぶ
9	きゅうぶ	10	じゅうぶ	100	ひゃくぶ	?	なんぶ

Phrase Note: *Ichibu* 一部 is commonly used to also mean “one part/portion.”

いちにち せ ん ぶ う
5. 一日で1000部売りました。

Ichinichi de sembu urimashita.

I sold 1000 copies in a day.

りれき いちぶ さくじょ
6. 履歴の一部だけ削除した。

Rireki no ichibu dake sakujo shita.

I deleted only a part of my history.

じゅう ぶ おく
7. パンフレットを10部送りました。

Panfuretto wo jūbu okurimashita.

I sent ten copies of the pamphlet.

-ko 戸

The counter *-ko* 戸 counts houses.

1	いっこ	2	にこ	3	さんこ	4	よんこ
5	ごこ	6	ろっこ	7	ななこ	8	はっこ はちこ

normal

9	きゅうこ	10	じゅっこ じっこ	100	ひゃっこ	?	なんこ
---	------	----	-------------	-----	------	---	-----

8. 10 戸^{じゅっ こ あ}はまだ空いています。

Jukko wa mada aite imasu.

Ten homes are still empty.

9. およそ 60 戸^{ろくじゅっ こ ていでん}が停電していました。

Oyoso rokujukko ga teiden shite imashita.

Approximately sixty homes had experienced a power outage.

-hatsu 発

The counter *-hatsu* 発 counts bullets, explosions, attacks, sneezes, and anything that can colloquially be described as explosive.

1	いっぱつ	2	にはつ	3	さんぱつ	4	よんぱつ
5	ごはつ	6	ろっぱつ	7	ななはつ	8	はっぱつ
9	きゅうはつ	10	じゅっぱつ じっぱつ	100	ひゃっぱつ	?	なんぱつ

10. アメリカ軍が原爆^{ぐん げんぱく}を2発^{にはつとう か}投下した。

Amerika-gun ga gembaku wo nihatsu tōka shita.

The U.S army dropped two nuclear bombs.

11. 彼は弾^{かれ たま}を10発^{じゅっぱつ う}撃った。

Kare wa tama wo jupatsu utta.

I shot ten bullets.

12. あのライグマを2、3発^{に さんぱつ け}蹴った。

Ano araguma wo ni, sampatsu ketta.

I kicked that raccoon two, three times.

13. くしゃみを5発^{ごはつ}した後で、鼻血^{あと はなぢ}を出した^だ。

Kushami wo gohatsu shita ato de, hanaji wo dashita.

I had a nosebleed after sneezing three times.

-ken 軒

The counter **-ken 軒** counts individual houses that are not connected to each other. This is different from **-ko 戸**, which generically counts homes.

1	いっけん	2	にけん	3	さんけん さんげん	4	よんけん
5	ごけん	6	ろっけん	7	ななけん	8	はっけん
9	きゅうけん	10	じゅっけん じっけん	100	ひゃっけん	?	なんけん なんげん

さんけん いっけん あ や
14. 3軒に1軒が空き家になっている。

Sanken ni ikken ga akiya ni natte iru.

One in three houses are vacant.

きのう じしん じゅっけんちゅうよんけんこわ
15. 昨日の地震で、10軒中4軒壊れました。

Kinō no jishin de, jukken-chū yonken kowaremashita.

Four out of ten houses were destroyed in yesterday's earthquake.

しせんおおじしん ななまんけんいじょう とうかい ふたり しぼう
16. 四川大地震で7万軒以上が倒壊して2人が死亡しました。

Shisen Ōjishin de nanamanken ijō ga tōkai shite futari ga shibō shimashita.

Over 70,000 houses collapsed and two people died in the Great Sichuan Earthquake.

-nimmae 人前

The counter **-nimmae 人前** counts food portions. Despite beginning with 人, its readings are all regular.

1	いちにんまえ	2	ににんまえ	3	さんにんまえ	4	よにんまえ
5	ごにんまえ	6	ろくにんまえ	7	しちにんまえ ななにんまえ	8	はちにんまえ
9	きゅうにんまえ くにんまえ	10	じゅうにんまえ	100	ひゃくにんまえ	?	なんにんまえ

さんにんまえ りょう つく
17. 3人前の量を作りました。

San'nimmae no ryō wo tsukurimashita.

normal Ie three portions worth.

ぎょうざ じゅうにんまえか
18. 餃子を10人前買ってきました。
Gyōza wo jūnimmae katte kimashita.
I've come back with ten portions of gyoza.

ににんまえちゅうもん
19. (お) そばを2人前注文しました。
(O-)soba wo ninimmae chūmon shimashita.
I ordered two portions of soba.

Spelling Note: Soba is only seldom spelled as 蕎麦.

-chō 丁

The counter *-chō* 丁 counts the following items: Tofu, guns, konnyaku, servings at a restaurant (especially ramen), scissors, candles on a candlestick, saws, town blocks, violins, guitars, ink sticks, palanquins, photo attempts, rickshaws, etc.

1	いっちょう	2	にちょう	3	さんちょう	4	よんちょう
5	ごちょう	6	ろくちょう	7	ななちょう	8	はっちょう
9	きゅうちょう	10	じゅっちょう じっちょう	100	ひゃくちょう	?	なんちょう

けいさつ けんじゅうろくちょう じつだんにひゃくごじゅっぱつ おうしゅう
20. 警察は拳銃6丁と実弾250発を押収しました。
Keisatsu wa kenjū rokuchō to jitsudan nihyakugojuppatsu wo ōshū shimashita.
The police confiscated six handguns and 250 live bullets.

わたし きょう とうふ ちょう た
21. 私は今日、豆腐を3丁も食べました！
Watashi wa kyō, tofu wo sanchō mo tabemashita!
I ate three things of tofu today!

いっちょう
22. こんにやく1丁をタオルにくるみました。
Kon'nyaku itchō wo taoru ni kurumimashita.
I tucked one block of konnyaku into a towel.

Spelling Note: *Kon'nyaku* is only seldom spelled as 蒟蒻.

いっちょう も
23. ハサミは1丁も持っていません。
Hasami wa itchō mo motte imasen.
I don't own a single pair of scissors.

24. ノコギリを2丁買ってきました。
Nokogiri wo nichō katte kimashita.
I bought two saws.

Spelling Note: *Nokogiri* is occasionally spelled as 鋸.

-hon 本

The counter *-hon* 本 counts long, thin items: pencils, string, laces, cans, roads, movies, train lines, phone calls, home runs, rivers, moves in martial arts, etc.

1	いっぽん	2	にほん	3	さんぽん	4	よんぽん
5	ごほん	6	ろっぽん	7	ななぽん	8	はっぽん
9	きゅうぽん	10	じゅっぽん じっぽん	100	ひゃっぽん	?	なんぽん

25. 鉛筆を3本取ってください。
Empitsu wo sambon totte kudasai.
Please three pencils.

26. 道一本隔てた寺に参拝した。
Michi ippon hedateta tera ni sampai shita.
I visited a temple a road away.

27. アニメを10本見ました。
Anime wo juppon mimashita.
I watched ten anime.

28. 彼は指を5本折った。
Kare wa yubi wo gohon otta.
He broke five fingers.

-ten 点

The counter *-ten* 点 counts points, commodities, or merchandise.

1	いってん	2	にてん	3	さんてん	4	よんてん
normal							

5	ごてん	6	ろくてん	7	ななてん	8	はってん はちてん
9	きゅうてん	10	じゅってん じってん	100	ひゃくてん	?	なんてん

29. 彼は十点満点（を）取りました。
Kare wa juttentanten (wo) torimashita.
 He got a perfect ten.

30. 10万円の商品（を）月（に）100点売っています。
Jūman'en no shōhin wo tsuki (ni) hyakuten utte imasu.
 I sell 100 pieces of merchandise worth 100,000 yen a month.

31. ノート5冊と万年筆2本と消しゴム3個、合わせて10点のお買い上げですね。
Nōto gosatsu to man'nenhitsu nihon to keshigomu sanko, awasete juttententō no o-kaiage desu ne?
 You're buying five notebooks, two fountain pens, and three erasers for a total of ten items, yes?

-haku 泊

The counter *-haku* 拍 counts nights of a stay.

1	いっぱく	2	にはく	3	さんぱく	4	よんぱく
5	ごはく	6	ろっぱく	7	ななはく	8	はっぱく
9	きゅうはく	10	じゅっぱく じっぱく	100	ひゃっぱく	?	なんぱく

32. 税別で1泊15万ウォンでした。
Zeibetsu de ippaku jūgomanwon deshita.
 It was 150,000 won for one stay excluding tax.

33. 料金は管理費など全て込みで1泊1名様（につき）1万円です。
Ryōkin wa kanrihi nado subete komi de ippaku ichimei-sama ni tsuki ichiman'en desu.
 The charge is 10,000 yen per person for one with with all-fees-in-price including management costs.

normal

34. ツインルーム 1 部屋で 3 泊です。
Tsuin rūmu hitoheya de sampaku desu.
Three nights in 1 twin-sized room.

35. フランスのマルセイユに 5 泊しました。
Furansu no maruseiyu ni gohaku shimashita.
I stayed five nights in Marseilles, France.

-tsū 通

The counter *-tsū* 通 counts letters as in *tegami* 手紙, e-mails, notes, and written reports.

1	いっつう	2	にっつう	3	さんつう	4	よんつう
5	ごっつう	6	ろくつう	7	ななつう	8	はちつう はっつう
9	きゅうつう	10	じゅうつう じっつう	100	ひゃくつう	?	なんつう

36. 同じ内容の文書を 3 通送りました。
Onaji naiyō no bunsho wo santsū okurimashita.
I sent three documents with the same content.

37. LINE を 1 通送りました。
Rain wo ittsū okurimashita.
I sent one LINE (message).

38. 返事の手紙を 2 通送りました。
Henji no tegami wo nitsū okurimashita.
I sent two letters in reply.

39. 受信メールを何通か消した。
Jushin mēru wo nantsū-ka keshita.
I deleted several received e-mails/texts.

-bi 尾

The counter *-bi* 尾 counts small fish and shrimp. It is also used in industries to refer to high-

normal

quality fish or simply when fish go from being caught to now being treated as ‘food.’

1	いちび	2	にび	3	さんび	4	よんび
5	ごび	6	ろくび	7	ななび	8	はちび
9	きゅうび	10	じゅうび	100	ひゃくび	?	なんび

40. 魚さかなの名前なまえを5尾ごび書いてください。
Sakana no namae wo gobi kaite kudasai.
Please write the names of five fish.

41. 今回こんかいは特大とくだい（サイズ）の冷凍れいとうむき海老え6尾び使つかいました。
Konkai wa tokudai (saizu) no reitō mukiebi rokubi tsukaimashita.
This time, I used six extra-large shelled shrimp.

42. 外国産がいこくさんのウナギも20尾売れました。
Gaikokusan no unagi mo nijūbi uremashita.
Twenty foreign-produced eels also sold.

Spelling Note: *Unagi* is often spelled as 鰻.

43. メバルちぎょの稚魚いつを（1）千尾せんびほど川かわに放流ほうりゅうした。
Mebaru no chigyo wo (is)sembi hodo kawa ni hōryū shita.
(They/we) stocked into the river around a thousand rockfish juveniles.

Spelling Note: *Mebaru* is only seldom spelled as 眼張.

Counting Fish

Counting fish is no easy task. Dead or alive, most fish are counted with *-hiki* 匹. However, when fish are lined up from head to tail fin, then they're counted with *-hon* 本. If referring to slices of fish, then you use *-mai* 枚. When presented as *sashimi* 刺し身, however, you then use *-kire* 切れ. When fish are dried out, they're counted with *-mai* 枚. When fish are gutted with their heads and spines taken out, they're counted with *-chō* 丁.

Cuts of fish cut into rectangular shapes are counted with *-saku* 冊 (which uses native number for 1 and 2). Simply from their appearance, certain fish are counted with *-hon* 本 by default for being long: amberjack (*burī* ブリ・鰺), Pacific saury (*samma* サンマ・秋刀魚), bonito (*katsuo* カツオ・鰹), tuna (*maguro* マグロ・鮪), etc. Flat fish are counted with *-mai* 枚. flounder (*hirame* ヒラメ・平目), right-eye flounder (*karei* カレイ・鰺), etc. Similarly,

very thin fish are often counted with *-jō* 条: halfbeak (*sayori* サヨリ 細魚), icefish (*shirauo* シラウオ・白魚), etc.

Eel (*unagi* ウナギ・鰻) are counted with either *-hiki* 匹 or *-hon* 本. However, when broiled into *kabayaki* 蒲焼, you use *-mai* 枚. When served on a skewer, you'd count them with *-kushi* 串 (which uses native numbers for 1-4, 7). This works for other fish as well. Although seldom done so today, very large fish may be counted with *-kon* 喉. This character means “throat” and in this context, it refers to large fish being carried whilst hanging from rope through their throats. Then, moreover you have *-bi* 尾, which is used for fish being used as bait, high-class fish, or fish when (being sold and or used) for cooking.

Lesson Note: For counters mentioned here that have not been formally introduced, it is okay not to memorize them until they are properly discussed.

-eki 駅

Eki 駅 means “stations” and also happens to be the counter for stations.

1	ひとえき	2	ふたえき	3	さんえき	4	よんえき
5	ごえき	6	ろくえき	7	ななえき	8	はちえき
9	きゅうえき	10	じゅうえき	11	じゅういちえき	?	なんえき

わたし なごやえき ふたえきはな す
44. 私 は名古屋駅から 2 駅離れたところに住んでいます。
Watashi wa Nagoya-eki kara futaeki hanareta tokoro ni sunde imasu.
I live somewhere two stations away from Nagoya Station.

ジェイアール ことし さんえき はいし
45. JR は今年、3 駅を廃止した。
Jeiāru wa kotoshi, san'eki wo haishi shita.
JR went away with three stations this year.

さいたまけん にんき ひゃくえき げんてい
46. 埼玉県の人気の100駅に限定しています。
Saitama-ken no ninki no hyakueki ni gentei shite imasu.
It's limited to the 100 stations popular in Saitama Prefecture.

-oku 億

The numbers 10, 100, 1,000, 10,000 are technically counters themselves. After 10,000, each number for ever fourth power is also treated as a counter. The next such unit after

normal

10,000 is for 100 million, which is *-oku* 億.

100 million	いちおく	1 billion	じゅうおく
10 billion	ひゃくおく	100 billion	(いっ) せんおく
?	なんおく		

47. 日本は人口規模を1億人に維持することを目指している。
Nihon wa jinkō kibo wo ichiokunin ni iji suru koto wo mezashite iru.
 Japan is aiming to maintain its population scale at 100 million people.

48. 中国語は、10億人に通じる言語のひとつです。
Chūgokugo wa, jūokunin ni tsūjiru gengo no hitotsu desu.
 Chinese is one language that is understood by a billion people.

-chō 兆

The next power to be treated as a counter is *-chō* 兆, which stands for trillion.

1	いっちょう	2	にちょう	3	さんちょう	4	よんちょう
5	ごちょう	6	ろくちょう ろっちょう	7	ななちょう	8	はっちょう
9	きゅうちょう	10	じゅっちょう じっちょう	100	ひゃくちょう	Quad.	(いっ) せんちょう
?	なんちょう						

49. 美容整形の世界市場は1兆円に達しています。
Biyōseikei no sekai shijō wa itchōen ni tasshite imasu.
 The world cosmetic plastic surgery market has reached one trillion yen.

50. 人の腸内には、100兆匹以上の菌が棲んでいます。
Hito no chōnai ni wa, hyakuchōhiki ijō no kin ga sunde imasu.
 There are over 100 trillion bacteria living inside the human intestines.

Counter Note: Incidentally, despite not being animals, bacteria are also frequently counted with *-hiki* 匹.

第99課: Want & Feeling I: ~たい & ほしい

Your wants and feelings are different from those of your friends'. This seemingly obvious difference is distinguished in Japanese. In English, both "Steve seems mad" and "Steve is mad" are grammatically correct and commonly used, but the same cannot be said for Japanese.

In this lesson, we'll learn how to express first and second person wants, meaning you'll be able to say things like "I want to go the park" and "Do you want to?"

~たい: Want to do...

~たい is used to show one's own want to do something, to ask about someone's wants, or to show what people **in general** want. Because this is about wanting to do something, though, the verb needs to express an action that involves willpower of the person in question.

漢字 Note: ~度い is an old and rare 漢字 spelling of ~たい. You may find it if you read older stuff.

Conjugating ~たい

As is the case for most endings, it attaches normally to the 連用形 of verbs.

一段	食べた い	I want to eat	見たい	I want to see	信じたい	I want to believe
五段	飲みたい い	I want to drink	行きたい	I want to go	知りたい	I want to know
する	したい	I want to do	見物したい い	I want to sightsee	買い物したい い	I want to shop
来る	来たい	I want to come				

~たい conjugates as a 形容詞. Although it may be strange to associate volition to act as an adjectival phrase, "want" is still a state, and so this is how you can rationalize this oddity of grammar.

	Plain Speech	Polite Speech
Non-Past	~たい	~たいです

Negative	～たくない	～たくないです・～たくありません
Past	～たかった	～たかったです
Negative Past	～たくなかった	～たくなかったです・～たくありませんでした

が Or を?

Whenever a verb has a direct object, we know to mark it with を. However, because ～たい makes a verb an adjective regardless of whether it has a direct object or not, a direct object can consequently be marked with either が or を. Whenever を is used, though, a lot more emphasis is placed on one's volition. Of course, if we're referencing different kinds of verbs like travel verbs which would use に・へ instead, neither would be applicable.

	が OK?	を OK?
飲みたい	○	○
見たい	○	○
行きたい	x	x
成りたい	x	x

1. コーヒーを飲みたくない。
I don't want to drink coffee.
2. 邪魔になりたくありません。
I don't want to become a bother.
3. ピザ {が・を} 食べたいです。
I want to eat pizza.
4. キス(が・を)したいだけ!
I just want to kiss!

Particle Note: As demonstrated, が and を can be dropped in casual speech.

5. 映画を^み観に行きたいです。
I want to go see a movie.

Particle Note: In this sentence, を cannot be replaced by が because it is part of the verb phrase 映画を^み観に行く which is being modified by ～たい as a whole.

Second Person

Second person is normally used in questions. Things like ～たいでしょう could be used to indirectly express second person want without sounding rude or too direct.

6. 東京に行きたいですか。
Do you want to go to Tokyo?
7. 日本に旅行したいですか。
Do you want to travel to Japan?
8. 何 {が・を} 食べたい? (Plain)
What do you want to eat?

～たい {の・ん} ですが: Asking for Advice

When you are asking for advice on something you would like to do, it is best to use ～たい with ～のですが・んですが to be more polite. It is also more indirect, and what may or may not follow is something like 何がいいでしょうか.

9. お土産^{みやげ}を買い^かたいんですが、何がいいでしょうか。
I'd like to buy a souvenir, but what would be good?
10. テレビを買い^かたいんですが、どちらがいいでしょうか。
I'd like to buy a TV, but which would be good?
11. 温泉に行きたいんですが、どこがいいでしょうか。
I'd like to go to a hot spring, but where is good?

欲しい: Wanting Something

When showing first person "want for something," use the adjective ほしい, alternatively sometimes written in 漢字 as 欲しい. We'll learn later about how to express someone else's want for something, but just as reminder, below are ほしい's basic conjugations.

Plain Speech	ほしい
Negative	ほしくない
Past	ほしかった
Negative Past	ほしくなかった

Particle Note: Although informal and somewhat improper, ～をほしい is also sometimes seen.

Person Note: As was the case for ～たい, showing second person want for something is normally used in the form of question.

12. 新しいプリンターがほしいです。

I want a new printer.

13. この本、ほしいでしょう？

You want this book, right?

14. このCDはどうしてもほしいから、買ってくれない？

I want this CD no matter what, so could you get it for me?

～てほしい: Wanting Something Done by...

～てほしい shows that you "want something done/to happen". The person you want to do the action for you is marked by the particle に.

15. **彼女に**きれいでいてほしい。

I want **her** to stay beautiful.

16. (**あなたに**) 毎日チャレンジしてほしい。

I would like **for you** to challenge yourselves every day.

17. (**僕に**) 山田さんと話してほしいんですか。

Do you want **me** to talk with Mr. Yamada?

18. 何かアドバイスしてほしいのですが...

We'd like you to give us some sort of advice, but...

～てほしかった

When ほしい is in the past tense, it shows regret that something didn't happen.

19. 彼氏にだけは分かってほしかった。

I only wanted my boyfriend to understand.

20. もっと早く来てほしかった。

I wanted you to have come earlier.

In showing someone's wish for something to happen, ほしい is followed by 〜と思う or 〜と思っている with the latter imperative for third person.

21. 親は私に大学へ行ってほしいと思っています。
My parents are wishing for me to go to college.

22. 復活してほしいと思う。
I wish for it to revive.

〜てもらいたい・いただきたい

〜てほしい, even when polite, is not the most polite way to tell someone that you would like them do to something for you. In this case you are implying that you are to be receiving a favor, and therefore, 〜てもらいたい (〜ていただきたい being more honorific) would be most appropriate.

23. 銀行へ行ってきてもらいたいんですが。
I would like you to go to the bank.

24. 先生に参加していただきたいんですが。
We'd like you to attend, Professor.

25. 彼らは私に出て行ってもらいたいと思っています。
They would like for me to leave.

26. 私たちに何か忠告してほしいのですが。
We would like you to give us some advice.

With the Negative

For ほしい, you may see 〜ないでほしい or 〜ほしくない. The first gives an explicit request. 〜てほしくない just states implicitly that you don't want something to be done or happen. Consequently, the latter sounds much softer. 〜ないでほしい places emphasis on what you don't want to hear, see, etc. The first is like "I want you to not..." and the second is like "I don't want...to...".

27. 政治家にならないでほしい。
I want you to not become a politician.

28. 誰にもできたと知らせないでほしい。

normal want you to not inform anyone that I was able to do it.

29. 雨が降ってほしくない。

I don't want it to rain.

30. 家族がいることを忘れてほしくないわ。(Feminine)

I don't want you to forget that you have a family.

More Examples

31a. そんなことまでしたくはないよ。

31b. そんなに遠くまで行きたくはないよ。(With the literal definition of "to go")

I don't want to go that far.

32. 彼らは登山^{とざん}しに行ったかが知りたい。

I want to know whether they went mountain climbing.

33. イギリスまでこの手紙を出したいんです。

I want to mail these letters to England.

34. もっと自由が欲しい。

I want more freedom.

35. これに何を書きたいんですか。

What do you want to write on this?

36. 彼に政治家になってもらいたい。

I want him to be a politician.

37. 彼女に来てもらいたくない。

I don't want her coming.

38. 普通^{ふつう}預金^{よきん}を始めたいんですが。

I'd like to start an ordinary savings account.

Culture Note: Money may be deposited and withdrawn anytime you like with a ^{ふつう}普通預金^{よきん}.

^{ていき}定期預金^{よきん} is a fixed deposit and a savings deposit is a ^た積み立て^{よきん}預金.

39. 報告書^{ほうこくしよ}は今度はもうすこし早く出してほしいのよ。聞いてる? (Feminine)

I want you to turn in your report a little earlier next time, you hear?

40. 5万3千円^{ごまんさんぜんえん}降ろしたいんですが。

normal want to withdraw 53,000 yen.

41. 私たちは三泊したいです。
さんばく

We want to stay three nights.

42. もし私が金持ちなら、城を買いたい。
しろ
If I were rich, I would want to buy a castle.

43. ソウルに行ってみたい。
I want to try to go to Seoul.

Grammar Note: ～てみたい should be used instead of ～たい when you are trying to say that you want to attempt to do something.

44a. クリントン前大統領と会いたいです。
I want to meet with Former President Clinton.

44b. クリントン前大統領に会ってみたいです。
I would like to try and meet Former President Clinton.

It wouldn't be surprising for another politician very close to Former President Clinton to say this. On the other hand, if they're on opposing sides and proximity isn't granted, ～てみたい may still be better.

第100課: Want & Feeling II: ～がる

～がる is an extremely important suffix to overcome restrictions on person with phrases of emotional/physical state in Japanese.

The Suffix ～がる

Adjectival phrases of emotion in Japanese cannot take third person subjects. Meaning, you cannot say things like.

1a. 鈴木さんは失恋して悲しいです。X
1a. Suzuki is heartbroken and sad.

To overcome this grammatical restriction, the suffix ～がる is needed.

1b. 鈴木さんは失恋して悲しがっています。
1b. Suzuki seems sad from being heartbroken.

To conjugate, you simply attach ～がる to the stem of adjective regardless of class. Although we haven't gotten into what ～がる means, it is conveniently similar to "seem" in English.

 are important differences that we'll get to later, so pay close attention!

Sad	悲しい	To seem sad	悲しがる
Happy	嬉しい	To seem happy	嬉しがる
Embarrassing	恥ずかしい	To seem embarrassed	恥ずかしがる
Scared	怖い	To seem scared	怖がる
New	新しい	To be fond of new things	新しがる
Rare	珍しい	To seem rare	珍しがる
Want to...	～たい	To seem to want	～たがる

Conjugation Note: Be careful to not confuse ～たかった and ～たがった or ほしかった and ほしがった, especially when listening as it may be tricky. Note that ～がる behaves like any other verb phrase. So, if ～ている is needed, you'll need to use ～がっている.

Usage Note: It's also interesting to note that there are many adjectival phrases that ～がる is never used with for whatever reason. Some include 好きだ, 涼しい, 軽い, きれいだ, etc. One restriction is that it can't be used with adjectives that show no emotional aspect of someone. There is also a subjective/objective aspect to adjectives that mustn't be ignored. When you "like" someone, that isn't a one time thing. But, いやだ could be temporary. This is one reason why you can say 嫌がる but not 好きがる.

Although this suffix is one method of getting around third person restrictions on emotion phrase.

2. わたしがアイスクリームを食べたがると、母が食べさせてくれた。
Whenever I wanted to eat ice cream, my mother would let me eat it.

Phrase Note: An easy example of debunking the claim that ～がる is used only in third person is the pattern ～がり屋, which is used to describe people's natures. So, if you're hot-nature, you're an 暑がり屋.

Using 食べたい would present an even worse grammatical error, which is using the conjunctive particle と (conditional form) with an adjective. So, what does ～がる mean? In most cases, it assesses the outward appearance or overall knowledge of something and relates the situation with the internal state of the person in question.

3. 遼太郎は顔には出さなかったが、心の中では悔しがっていた。
Ryotaro didn't let out, but he was regretting inside.

It may also be the case that it is used to help show an internal state not shown outwardly, and this can be referring to an attitude being floated by the person in question or an attitude

normal

grasped by someone else.

4. 遼太郎は表面上は悔しがったが、心の中では喜んでいた。
Ryotaro was regretting outwardly, but he was rejoicing inside.

Examples

5. 俺だけが面白がってたのか。
Was I the only one who thought (that) was funny.

Note: This example shows how 〜がる may be used to show a situation different than everything else.

6. 弟はおもちゃを見ると、いつもほしがる。
My little brother always wants a toy when he sees it.

Note: This example shows how 〜がる may be used to show someone being unreasonable.

7. 人はみな他人の事情を知りたがる。
People want to know about everyone else's situation.

8. 生徒は新しい単語や言い回しを知りたがりますが、まずは基本を教えることが大事です。
Students want to know new words and expressions, but it's important to first teach the basics.

9. 寒がり屋だから、カナダの暮らしは辛かった。
Because I'm cold-nature, life in Canada was harsh.

10. 暑がり屋だから、テキサスの暮らしはひどく辛かったよ！
Because I'm hot-nature, life in Texas was extremely harsh!

11. べつにすまななくてもいい。
You really don't have to feel sorry.
From 海辺のカフカ by 村上春樹.

12. 子供が食事を食べたがらない。
My child doesn't want to eat dinner.

13. 彼女はアイスクリームを食べたがっている。
She wants to eat ice cream.

- だれ かみ しん
14. 誰でも神を信じたがります。
Everyone wants to believe in God.

Grammar Note: ～たがる is used here because this is a general statement that may not be 100% true. ～がる gives a sense that someone/ feels or thinks that way.

参照: https://www.lang.nagoya-u.ac.jp/nichigen/menu7_folder/symposium/pdf/8/06.pdf

Aside from ～がる

Of course, there are other things you can use. For instance, ～そうだと after the stems of adjectives means "seems...". You may use かもしれない (might) or だろう・でしょう (probably). Of course, there are many other things. At the individual phrase level, however, you will see that some things should just never be used for oneself and others that should only be used in reference to others.

15a. 私は怒っている。△

15b. 私は腹が立っている。○
I'm angry.

16. 彼女は私のことを怒っていた。
She was angry at me.

17. いや、（彼は）僕のことを怒ってるかもね。（Casual）
Well, (he) might actually be angry at me.

18. 山田さんはとても悲しそうですね。
Yamada-san seems so sad, doesn't she?

Attribute: No Restrictions

Words that refer to someone's wants, feelings, or likes don't need another pattern when used as an attribute/general knowledge (総合的な知識). Thankfully there are situations where the first/second and third person grammatical distinctions aren't necessary. This also goes for with situations reflecting on the past where something is already known.

19. 母が好きな食べ物は寿司です。
The food my mother likes is sushi.

20. 若い人たちは海外に出たいのだ。
normal young people want to go overseas.

21. 弟はそのごろ韓国に行きたかったです。
My younger brother wanted to go to Korea then.
22. 参加したい人は図書館に行ってください。
Those that want to participate, please go to the library.
23. 日本では ^{うらな} 占 ^し い師に ^{うんせい} 運勢をみてもらいたい人が多いみたいです。
In Japan, it seems that a lot of people want their fortunes read by fortune-tellers.
24. すぐやりたがる人はいやだ。
People that want to immediately do it are a pain.

Grammar Note: This doesn't give you a 100% free pass to not use ～がる when the situation calls for it.

Beginners II

しょきゅう

初級 II: Beginners II

第51課: Adjectives III: *No*-Adjectival Nouns ノ形容詞

第52課: Adjectives: *Ōi* 多い & *Sukunai* 少ない

第53課: Adjectives: *Onaji* 同じ

第54課: Counters III (Time: Part I): 日, 週間, 月, 年, Etc.

第55課: Counters IV (Time: Part II): 時, 時間, 分, 秒, 晩, 夜

第56課: Basic Absolute Time Phrases

第57課: *Kara*, *Node*, & *Noda*: から, ので, & のだ

第58課: The Particle *Noni*: のに

第59課: Criticizing: くせに & くせして

第60課: Adnominal Adjectives: /i/ vs /na/

第61課: Before: *Mae* 前

normal

第62課: After I: *Ato* あと, *Nochi* のち, *Te kara* てから

第63課: When: *Toki* 時

第64課: Relative Time

第65課: Transitivity I: Different Transitive & Intransitive Forms

第66課: The Particle *To*: と II: Citation

第67課: The Particle *Demo*: でも

第68課: The Particle *Ya*: や

第69課: The Particle *Shi*: し

第70課: *Kosoado* こそあど IV

第71課: While I: *Aida* 間

第72課: While II: *Uchi* うち

第73課: Time Phrases + に

第74課: Giving Verbs

第75課: Permission: ていい

第76課: The Conjunctive Particles が & けれど

第77課: 語尾 I: よ & ね

第78課: 語尾 II: わ, な, と, の, さ, ぞ, ぜ, & え

第79課: Start to: ～始める, ～出す, & ～かける

第80課: End: ～終わる・終える, ～やむ, & ～上がる・上げる

第81課: Whenever: 毎～, ～毎に, & ～おきに

第82課: Potential I

第83課: Potential II: できる

第84課: Pronouns II

第85課: The Particle だけ

第86課: The Non-Question "How": ～かた

第87課: Interrogatives II: The Question "How"

第88課: Interrogatives III: With Particles

第89課: The Particle の II

第90課: The Particle で II

第91課: Might: かもしれない

第92課: Pluralization

第93課: Pluralization II: ～たち

第94課: Plural こそあと: これら, それら, & あれら

第95課: Te て With Giving Verbs: ～てあげる, ～てくれる, & ～てもらう

第96課: 知る VS 分かる

第97課: Counters V: 文字, クラス, 品, 桁, 切れ, 玉, 房, 株, 袋, 箱, 棟, 組み, 皿, 束, & 通り

第98課: Counters VI: 羽, 部, 戸, 発, 軒, 人前, 丁, 本, 点, 泊, 通, 尾, 駅, & 兆

第99課: Want and Feeling I: ～たい & ほしい

第100課: Want and Feeling II: ～がる